

THE **Windy**

Phiên bản
mới nhất
**NEW
EDITION**

Bài tập **NGŨ' PHÁP** **TIẾNG ANH** Căn bản

**Basic
English
Grammar**
IN USE

Exercises
with answers



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN
ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA

The Windy
Biên soạn

BÀI TẬP NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH CĂN BẢN

BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

Exercises with Answers



Tái bản lần 2

Hiệu đính: Mỹ Hương

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

Lời nói đầu

Bạn đọc thân mến!

Ngữ pháp là vấn đề quan trọng đối với người học tiếng Anh vì khi nắm rõ những kiến thức tiếng Anh cơ bản, bạn sẽ học tập và làm việc tốt hơn. Tuy nhiên học mà không đi đôi với hành thì bạn khó có thể nhớ lâu những kiến thức ngữ pháp cần thiết mà chúng tôi đã đề cập trong cuốn **Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh căn bản**. Xuất phát từ mục đích đó, chúng tôi đã biên soạn kèm cuốn **Bài tập ngữ pháp tiếng Anh căn bản** với mong muốn giúp bạn đọc nắm vững những kiến thức trọng tâm nhất mà chúng tôi đã giới thiệu trong cuốn giáo trình.

Cuốn sách gồm 128 bài ứng với từng chủ điểm ngữ pháp và 25 bài kiểm tra tổng hợp giúp bạn ôn lại và củng cố các kiến thức đã học. Hơn nữa, các bài tập có kèm theo hình ảnh sinh động sẽ giúp bạn đọc tiếp thu các kiến thức dễ dàng hơn. Cuối sách là phần đáp án các bài tập để bạn kiểm tra lại kiến thức của mình.

Trong quá trình biên soạn, cuốn sách này không tránh khỏi những thiếu sót, rất mong quý độc giả góp ý để chúng tôi hoàn thiện cuốn sách này trong lần tái bản sau.

Chúc các bạn thành công!

Nhóm biên soạn
The Windy

BÀI 1:

**WORD CLASSED: NOUNS, VERBS,
ADJECTIVES, etc**
(Từ loại: danh từ, động từ, tính từ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Read this paragraph and then say which class each underlined word belongs to.

Christina didn't go to the café with the other students. Emma told her they were going there, but she wanted to finish her work. Christina isn't very sociable. She stays in her room and concentrates totally on her studies. She's an excellent student, but she doesn't have much fun.

- ▶ go *verb*
▶ to *preposition*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. café..... <i>verb</i> | 9. in..... <i>Preposition</i> |
| 2. the..... <i>preposition</i> | 10. and..... <i>Conjunction</i> |
| 3. told..... <i>v</i> | 11. totally..... <i>Adv</i> |
| 4. they..... <i>pronoun</i> | 12. an..... <i>Adv</i> |
| 5. there..... <i>pronoun</i> | 13. excellent..... <i>Adjective</i> |
| 6. she..... <i>pronoun</i> | 14. student..... <i>Noun</i> |
| 7. finish..... <i>v</i> | 15. but..... <i>Conjunction</i> |
| 8. sociable..... <i>Adjective</i> | 16. fun..... <i>Adjective</i> |

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read this paragraph and then write the words in the spaces below. Write the first three verbs under 'Verb', and so on. Do not write the same word more than once.

Arthur thinks Nancy is wonderful. He loves her madly, and he dreams of marrying her, but unfortunately he is rather old for her. Today they are at a café with their friends Miranda and Anthony, so Arthur can't get romantic with Nancy. But he might buy her some flowers later.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
<i>thinks</i>	<i>Arthur</i>	<i>wonderful</i>	<i>carefully</i>
<i>low</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>empty</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>dreaming</i>	<i>friends</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>very</i>
Preposition	Determiner	Pronoun	Linking word
<i>at</i>		<i>her</i>	<i>is</i>
		<i>they</i>	<i>are</i>
		<i>it</i>	<i>was</i>

- Exercise 3:

Is the underlined word a verb, a noun or an adjective?

- Shall we go for a walk? *noun*
 ► Shall we walk into town? *verb*

1. Jason wanted to talk to Susan.....
2. Jason wanted a talk with Susan.
3. The windows aren't very clean.
4. Doesn't he clean the window?
5. Vanessa is feeling quite tired now.....
6. Studying all night had tired Hilary out.
7. Harriet wanted to show Linda her photos
8. We went to a fabulous show in Alaska.
9. Bernard thought Jennifer looked beautiful.....
10. A strange thought came into Lily's head.

BÀI 2:

**SENTENCE STRUCTURE: SUBJECT,
VERB, OBJECT, etc.**
(Cấu trúc câu: chủ ngữ, động từ, tân ngữ, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at each underlined phrase and say what part of the sentence it is: subject, verb, object, complement or adverbial.

▶ They're having a great time. *object < tân ngữ*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>The hat</u> is nice. <i>subject</i> | 4. It's <u>great fun</u> . <i>object</i> |
| 2. I really <u>enjoy</u> camping. | 5. They like <u>that place</u> . |
| 3. We're <u>on a farm</u> . | 6. The scenery is <u>beautiful</u> . |

📖 - Exercise 2:

Look at this part of the conversations and then write the letters a)- e) in the correct place.

- a) Andrew: That was a difficult job.
- b) Justin: I agree.
- c) Clark: I'm on my deathbed.
- d) Andrew: Someone should give us a medal.
- e) Helen: I've made some more tea.

▶ Subject + verb

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Subject + verb + object | <i>b</i> |
| 2. Subject + verb + complement | ..... |
| 3. Subject + verb + adverbial | ..... |
| 4. Subject + verb + object + object | ..... |

📖 - Exercise 3:

Put the words in the correct order and write the statements.

▶ is / Cindy / very nice? *Cindy is very nice.*

1. volleyball / likes / Kevin

2. an accident / Daniel / had
3. moved / the piano / we
4. a tall man / Paul / is
5. sat / on the floor / everyone
6. gave / some help / Jason's friends / him



- Exercise 4:

These sentences are from a news report. Write down the two adverbials in each sentence.

- Prince Charles opened a new sports centre *in Stoke*
 in Stoke yesterday. *yesterday*
1. He also spoke with several young people.
 2. The sports centre was first planned in 1994.
 3. Naturally, the local council could not
 finance the project without help.
 4. Fortunately, they managed to obtain money
 from the National Lottery.

BÀI 3:

DIRECT and INDIRECT OBJECTS

(Tân ngữ trực tiếp và tân ngữ gián tiếp)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Combine 'give' with one of these words to write sentences about them: *necklace, scarf, sweater, tennis racket, watch*

► To Cindy From Peter	1. To Tommy From Fiona	2. To Georgia From Mark	3. To Daisy From Jim	4. To Harriet From Cindy
watch	sweater	tennis racket	necklace	scarf

► *Peter gave Cindy a watch.*

1. 3.
2. 4.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Write the information in one sentence. Put the underlined part at the end of the sentence. Sometimes you need 'to'

➤ William lent something to Fiona. It was his book.

→ William *lent Fiona his book*.

➤ Victor sent a message. It was to his boss.

→ Victor *sent a message to his boss*.

1. Lauren sold her necklace. Her friend bought it.

→ Lauren.....

2. Alice told the joke. She told all her friends.

→ Alice.....

3. Emma gave some help. She helped her neighbour.

→ Emma.....

4. Simon wrote to his teacher. He wrote a letter.

→ Simon.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete each answer using the words in brackets. Sometimes you need to use 'to' or 'for'

- ▶ Give these papers *to* my secretary.
- ▶ Could you make some coffee *for* us?
 1. Book a flightme, could you?
 2. Can you post this cheque the hotel?
 3. Don't show these plansanyone.
 4. Leave a messagemy secretary.
 5. Fetch the file me, could you?
 6. Write a memo all managers.

- Exercise 4:

Complete each answer using the words in brackets. Sometimes you need to use *to* or *for*.

- ▶ Jim: Why is everyone laughing? (a funny story/ us)
- Cindy: Mary told *us* a *funny story*.
- 1. Sally: It's pouring with rain, look. (my umbrella/ you)
Ellen: It's OK. I'll lend
- 2. Henry: What about those papers you found? (them/ the police)
Justin: Oh, I handed
- 3. Bob: How are things with you, Paul? (a job/ me)
Paul: Fine. Someone has offered
- 4. Peter: What are you doing with those bottles? (them/ the bottle bank)
Carol: I'm taking
- 5. David: There's some fish left over. (it/ the cat)
Linda: I'll feed.....

BÀI 4:

THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

(Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

- Exercise 1:

Combine one verb with one object to write sentences.

Verbs: *carry, paint, play, ride, take*

Objects: *a bicycle, a parcel, a photo, a picture, basketball*

► *They're playing basketball.*

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. He's | 3. They're |
| 2. She is | 4. He's |

- Exercise 2:

Complete Kevin's conversation with Arthur. Put in a present continuous form of the verb.

Arthur: What (►) *are you doing?* (you/do)

Kevin: (►) *I'm writing* (I/ write) a letter to a friend. He's a disc jockey. Natasha and I (1).....(try) to organize a disco.

Arthur: That sounds a lot of work. How (2).....(you/ find) time for your studies?

Kevin: Well, as I said, Natasha (3)(help) me.
 (4) (we/ get) on all right. (5)(we/ not/ spend) too much time on it. (6)(it/ not/ take) me away from my studies, don't worry about that.
 Oh, sorry, (7)(you/ wait) for this computer?

Arthur: Yes, but there's no hurry.

Kevin: (8)(I/ correct) the last bit of the letter. I've nearly finished.

- Exercise 3:

What can you say in these situations? Add a sentence with the present continuous.

► You have been ill, but you're better now than you were.

I'm OK now, *I'm feeling better*.

1. A friend is at your flat and suggests going out, but you can see rain outside.
I don't want to go out now. Look,.....
2. You want to get off the bus, but the man next to you is sitting on your coat.
Excuse me,.....
3. A friend rings you up in the middle of 'Neighbours', your favourite soap opera.
Is it important?.....
4. A friend rings you up at work.
Sorry, I can't talk now.
5. A friend wants to talk to you, but you have just started to write an important letter.
Can I talk to you later?

BÀI 5:

THE PRESENT SIMPLE

(Thì hiện tại đơn)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at each underlined verb and say what kind of meaning it expresses. It is a thought, a feeling, a fact hay a repeated action?

- Cindy often works late at the office. *a repeated action*
- I hate quiz programmes. *a feeling*
1. Jame loves sport.
 2. It's OK. I understand your problem.
 3. I usually go to work by bus.
 4. We play football every Friday.
 5. The computer belongs to Laura.
 6. These plates cost £19 each.
 7. I'm hungry. I want something to eat.
 8. I believe it's the right thing to do.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences by putting in the verbs. Use the present simple. You have to decide if the verb is positive or negative.

- Rose is very sociable. She *knows* (know) lots of people.
- We've got plenty of chairs, thanks. We *don't want* (want) any more.
1. I've got five cats and three dogs. I.....(love) animals.
 2. We always travel by bus. We(own) a car.
 3. No breakfast for Veronica, thanks. She(eat) breakfast.
 4. Sophia is good at badminton. She(win) every game.
 5. What's the matter? You(look) very happy.
 6. My friend is finding life in London a bit difficult. She.....
(speak) English.
 7. Most students live quite close to the college, so they(walk) there.

8. His sports kit is really muddy. That shirt(need) a good wash.
9. Don't try to ring the bell. It(work).
10. I hate telephone answering machines. I just(like) talking to them.

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in the present simple form

Cindy: (►) *Do you like* (you/ like) football, Jason?

Jason: (►) *I love* (I/ love) it. I'm a Arsenal fan. (1).....(I/ go) to all their games. Andrew usually (2)..... (come) with me. And (3).....(we/ travel) to away games, too. Why (4).....(you/ not/ come) to a match some time?

Cindy: I'm afraid football (5) (not/ make) sense to me- men running after a ball. Why (6).....(you/ take) it so seriously?

Jason: It's a wonderful game. (7)(I/ love) it. Arsenal are my whole life.

Cindy: How much (8).....(it/cost) to buy the tickets and pay for the travel?

Jason: A lot. (9).....(I/ not/ know) exactly how much. But (10)..... (that/ not/ matter) to me. (11).....(I/ not / want) to do anything else. (12)(that/ annoy) me?

Cindy: No, (13).....(it/ not/ annoy) me. I just (14).....(find) it a bit sad.

BÀI 6:

PRESENT CONTINUOUS or SIMPLE?
(Hiện tại đơn và hiện tại tiếp diễn)

📖 - Exercise 1:

At work Daniel is talking to Jim in the corridor. Complete their conversation. Put in the present continuous or simple of the verbs.

Daniel: (►) *Are you looking* (you/ look) for someone?

Jim: Yes, (►) *I need* (I/ need) to speak to Tom. He isn't in his office.

Daniel: (1) *He is talking* (he/ talk) to the boss at the moment.
(2) *I think* (I/ think) (3).....(they/ discuss) money.

Jim: Oh, right. And what about you? (4).....(you/ look) for someone too?

Daniel: Yes, Paula. (5).....(you/ know) where she is?

Jim: Oh, she isn't here today. She only (6).....(work) three days a week. (7).....(she/ not/ work) on Thursdays. She'll be here on Monday.

Daniel: Thank you. (8).....(you/ know) a lot about Paula.

Jim: Well, most days (9).....(I/ give) her a lift, or (10).....(she/ give) me one. (11).....(she/ live) quite close to me. (12).....(it/ save) petrol.

Daniel: Yes, of course. Good idea. Yes, (13).....(I/ agree). Well, (14).....(I/ waste) my time here then. I'll get back to my computer.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences. Put in the present continuous or simple of the verbs.

► *I want* (I/ want) a new motorbike. *I am saving* (I/ save) up to buy one.

- I'm afraid I have no time to help just now..... (I/ write) a report. But..... (I/ promise) I'll give you some help later.

2. The sun..... (rise) in the east, remember. It's behind us so..... (we/ travel) west.
3.(I/ write) to my parents. (I/ write) to them every Friday.
4. She hasn't got a car at the moment, so..... (she/ go) to work on the bus this week. Usually..... (she/ drive) to work.
5. Normally..... (I/ start) work at eight o'clock, but..... (I/ start) at seven this week. We're very busy at the moment.
6. (it/ snow) outside..... (it/ come) down quite hard, look.

□ - Exercise 3:

Complete the sentences. Use '*always*' and the present continuous or simple.

- Jordan: Daniel and Lucy argue much too often, I think.
Karen: I know. *They are always arguing.*
- 1. Simon: Every time I drive along here, I go the wrong way.
Emma: But it's very simple, isn't it? Why..... the wrong?
- 2. Anna: Paul misses lectures much too often in my opinion.
Susan: I agree..... lectures.
- 3. Thomas: Tommy takes the train everyday, doesn't he?
Kevin: Yes,..... the train.
- 4. Nancy: You forget your keys every time.
Albert: I try to remember them, but.....
- 5. Cheryl: Edwin talks too much, doesn't he?
Jane: Yes, and..... about football.

BÀI 7:

STATE VERBS and ACTION VERBS
(Động từ chỉ hành động và chỉ trạng thái)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Henry is on the Internet. He's telling people about himself. Say which verbs express states and which express actions.

▶ I surf the Net most evenings. *action*

1. My flat is in the town centre.

2. I drive a taxi in the daytime.

3. I own three cars.

4. I go to lots of parties.

5. I love volleyball.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversations. Choose the correct form of the verb.

Sarah: Hi, Jack. What (▶) do you look/ are you looking at?

Jack: Oh, hi. These are photos of me when I was a child.

Sarah: Oh, look at this one. (1) I think/ I'm thinking you look lovely, Jack

Jack: (2) I have/ I'm having some more photos here.

Sarah: Look at this. Why such a big coat?

Jack: It was my father's. That's why (3) it didn't fit/ it wasn't fitting properly.

Sarah: Oh, (4) I see/ I'm seeing. And (5) you have/ you're having your tea here. And in this one (6) you think/ you're thinking about something very serious.

Jack: This is a photo of the village (7) I come/ I'm coming from.

Sarah: Oh, that's nice.

Jack: And I caught this fish, look. (8) It weighed/ It was weighing about half a kilo.

Sarah: What a nice little boy! And what a sentimental old thing you are now!

- Exercise 3:

Put in the correct form of "**be**"

- ▶ Emma *is being* very lazy at the moment. She's done no work at all today.
- ▶ We *are* interested in doing a course here.
 1. Of course you can understand it. You..... stupid, that's all.
 2. I'm afraid Maria can't come because she..... ill.
 3. The children..... very polite today. They don't usually behave so well.
 4. I..... tired. I want to go home.
 5. Jordan is doing some of the work. He..... very helpful at the moment.

- Exercise 4:

Write a sentence which follows on. Choose from these sentences.

It's too expensive to buy.

I've never wanted to change it.

I think it's going to be perfect for me.

I play it every weekend.

It uses so much petrol.

And I've still got a chance to win.

- ▶ I like my job. *I've never wanted to change it.*
 1. I'm liking my new job.....
 2. The motorbike is costing a lot of money.....
 3. The motorbike costs a lot of money.....
 4. I'm enjoying the game.....
 5. I enjoy the game.....

TEST 1

Exercise 1:

Read the conversation between two students. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

Fiona: Who (►) is Thomas talking to?

Susan: I can't see Thomas.

Fiona: You (1)..... looking in the right place. He's over there.

Susan: Oh, that's David. He's new here.

Fiona: Really? Where (2)..... he live? (3)..... you know?

Susan: No, I (4)..... know anything else about him.

Fiona: What (5)..... they talking about, I wonder?

Susan: Well, he (6)..... look very interested. He's got a very bored expression on his face. And he (7)..... saying anything.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------|
| ► a. are | b. do | c. does | d. is |
| 1 a. aren't | b. doesn't | c. don't | d. isn't |
| 2 a. are | b. do | c. does | d. is |
| 3 a. Are | b. Do | c. Does | d. Is |
| 4 a. aren't | b. doesn't | c. don't | d. 'm not |
| 5 a. are | b. do | c. does | d. is |
| 6 a. aren't | b. doesn't | c. don't | d. isn't |
| 7 a. aren't | b. doesn't | c. don't | d. isn't |

Exercise 2:

Read Alice's postcard to Jane and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

We're (►) *having* a great time here. It's beautiful, and the sun (1)..... shining. Yesterday I went water-skiing! What (2)..... you think of that? I'm (3)..... at a table in our hotel room and writing a few postcards. The room is fine, but we (4)..... like the

food very much. But it (5)..... matter because we (6)..... out to a restaurant every evening.

We're both (7)..... very lazy at the moment. I (8)..... up quite late in the morning, George (9)..... up even later. You know of course how much George's work (10)..... to him and how he's (11)..... talking about it. Well, the holiday is so good that he's forgotten all about work. So it's the perfect holiday. The only problem is that it's (12)..... us a lot of money. But we'll worry about that later.

- Exercise 3:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~What is this word here mean?~~

What does this word here mean?

1. ~~Daniel catch the same train every morning.~~

2. ~~At the moment my brother stays a hotel.~~

3. ~~Her suitcase is weighing eight kilos.~~

4. ~~What colour you like best?~~

5. ~~Maria wearing her new coat today.~~

6. ~~Both my sisters likes sport.~~

7. ~~The boys are play football at the moment.~~

8. ~~The children is doing their homework now.~~

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb.

► Emma: Why *do you want* (you/ want) to change the whole plan?

Jack: I'm just not happy with it.

Emma: And *I don't understand* (I/ not/ understand) why you *are being* (you/be) so difficult about it.

1. David: Could you post the goods to me, please?
 Tracy: Yes, certainly.
 David:(I/ live) at a guest house at the moment
 as.....(I/ look) for a flat. So could you send it to my
 work address?
 Tracy: Yes, of course. And you'll have the goods by the end of week,
 (I/promise).
2. Anna:(I/ always/ fall) asleep. I just can't keep awake.
 Susan: What time.....(you/ go) to bed?
 Anna: About eleven o'clock usually but.....(it/ not/ make) any
 difference.
3. Paula:(I/ like) musicals. And this is a great show, isn't
 it?.....(you/ enjoy) it?
 Jane: Yes, I am.....(I/ love) every minute of it.
4. Lucy:(I/ think) this road is really dangerous. Look how
 fast that lorry.....(go).
 Mary:(I/ agree). People shouldn't go so fast.
5. Brian: What.....(you/ do)?
 Janet:(I/ weigh) this letter.....(I/ need) to know
 how many stamps to put on it.
6. Maria: Your new trousers.....(look) nice.
 Linda: Thank you. The trouble is.....(they/ not/ fit)
 properly.....(I/ not/ know) why I bought them, really.
7. Bob:(I/ think) of buying a new computer.
 Jason: But computer.....(cost) so much money. What's wrong
 with the one we've got?
 Bob:(it/ get) out of date now.
8. Natalie: Is Laura in, please?
 Alice: Yes, but.....(I/ think) she's busy at the
 moment.....(she/ wash) her hair.

BÀI 8:

THE PAST SIMPLE (Quá khứ đơn)

- Exercise 1:

What did Janet do on holiday last month? Look at her photos and use these words: *go out dancing, have a picnic, lie on the beach, play volleyball, swim in the sea*



► *She lay on the beach.*

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

- Exercise 2:

Complete the newspaper story about a fire. Put in the past simple forms of the verbs.

Two people (►) *died* (die) in a fire in Ellis Street, Oldport yesterday morning. They (1)..... (be) Martin and Cindy Paynter, a couple in their seventies. The fire (2)..... (start) at 3.20 am. A neighbour, Mr Spears, (3)..... (see) the flames and (4)..... (call) the fire brigade. He also (5)..... (try) to get into the house and rescue his

neighbours, but the heat (6)..... (be) too great. The fire brigade (7)..... (arrive) in five minutes. Twenty fire-fighters (8)..... (fight) the fire and finally (9)..... (bring) it under control. Two fire-fighters (10)..... (enter) the burning building but (11).....(find) the couple dead.

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in the past simple negatives and questions.

Emma: (►) *Did you have* (you / have) a nice weekend in Twain?

Martin: Yes, thanks. It was good. We looked around and then we saw a show. (1)..... (we / not / try) to do too much.

Emma: What sights (2)..... (you / see)?

Martin: We had a look round the Louvre. (3) (I/ not / know) there was so much in there.

Emma: And what show (4)..... (you / go) to?

Martin: Oh, a musical. I forget the name. (5)..... (I/ not /like) it.

Emma: Oh, dear. And (6)..... (Susan / enjoy) it?

Martin: No, not really. But we enjoyed the weekend. Susan did some shopping, too, but (7)..... (I/ not / want) to go shopping.

BÀI 9:

THE PAST CONTINUOUS (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)

- Exercise 1:

Today is the first of January, the start of a new year. Most people are feeling a bit tired. What were they doing at midnight last night?

Use these verbs: *dance, drive, listen, watch, write*

Use these phrases after the verb: *an essay, his taxi, in the street, television, to a band*



► Carol was listening to a band.

1. Henry and Nancy
2. Ellen and David
3. Jim.....
4. Justin

- Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in the past continuous forms.

Janet: (►) *I was looking* (I / look) for you, Mary. I'm afraid I've broken this dish.

Mary: Oh no! What (1)..... (you / do)?

Janet: (2)..... (I / take) it into the kitchen. I bumped into Emma
(3)..... (she / come) out just as (4)..... (I / go) in.

Mary: I expect it was your fault. (5) (you / not / look) wh
(6)..... (you / go).

Janet: Sorry. I'll buy you another one as soon as I have some money.

- Exercise 3:

**What can you say in these situations? Add a sentence with the p
continuous to say that an action lasted a long time.**

► You had to work yesterday. The work went on all day.

I was working all day.

1. You had to make phone calls. The calls went on all evening.

.....

2. You had to wait in the rain. The wait lasted for half an hour.

.....

3. You had to make sandwiches. This went on all afternoon.

.....

4. You had to sit in a traffic jam. You were there for two hours.

.....

5. Your neighbour played loud music. This went on all night.

.....

BÀI 10:

PAST CONTINUOUS or SIMPLE?

(Quá khứ tiếp diễn hay quá khứ đơn?)

- Exercise 1:

Henry is always having accidents. His girlfriend Fiona is talking about some of the accidents. Write her sentences from these notes. Each sentence has one verb in the past continuous and one in the past simple..

► when / he / carry / a suitcase / he / drop / it / on his foot

When he was carrying a suitcase, he dropped it on his foot.

► he / break / his leg / when / he / ski

He broke his leg when he was skiing.

1. he / sit down / on a chair / while / I / paint / it

.....

2. as / he / run / for a bus / he / collide/with a lamppost

.....

3. his hair / catch / fire / when / he / cook / chips

.....

4. when/ he/ hold/ a beautiful vase/ he/ suddenly/ drop/ it

.....

5. he / sit / in the garden / when / a wasp / sting / him / on the nose

.....

- Exercise 2:

Put in the correct form of the verb.

Natalie: I hear the lights (►) *went* (go) out in your flats last night.

Anna: Yes, (►) *I was watching* (I / watch) a documentary on TV when suddenly. (1)..... (we / lose) all the power. But (2).....(it / come) on again after about ten minutes.

Susan: Rachel (3)..... (come) down the stairs when the lights (4)..... (go) out. She almost (5)..... (fall) over.

David: Matthew and I (6)..... (play) table tennis at the time.

Andrew: (7)..... (I/ work) on the computer. (8)..... (I/ lose) a whole hour's work. But this morning (9)..... (I/ get) up early and (10)..... (do) it again.

 - Exercise 3:

Find the second part of each sentence. Put each verb into the correct form.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ▶ Anna (have) a beautiful dream | when she (touch) the wire. |
| ▶ When David (see) the question | when I (find) a £20 note in it. |
| 1. The train (wait) | <u>when the alarm clock (ring).</u> |
| 2. I (read) a library book | the crowd (rush) in. |
| 3. Karen (have) an electric shock | <u>he (know) the answer</u> |
| | <u>immediately.</u> |
| 4. When the doors | they (see) that the sun (shine). |
| 5. When the campers (wake) | when we (arrive) at the station. |

- ▶ *Anna was having a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.*
▶ *When David saw the question, he knew the answer immediately.*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

TEST 2

- Exercise 1:

Put in the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

- The car *stopped* (stop) at the lights.
1. Alice and Jack..... (leave) the cinema before the end of the film.
 2. The streets (be) crowded with people.
 3. His grandmother (die) last year.
 4. Everyone (have) a marvellous time.
 5. We (not / like) the food they gave us.
 6. Simon..... (go) to Egypt last month.
 7. The accident (happen) last month.
 8. It..... (not/be) a very comfortable journey.
 9. She..... (know) that ages ago.

- Exercise 2:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- There were lights on the spacecraft. (had)

The spacecraft had lights on it.

1. She had her old coat on. (wearing)
.....
2. I was on holiday, and you were on holiday, too. (we)
.....
3. It isn't true that he made a mistake. (didn't)
.....
4. The boys were in the middle of a game of cards. (playing)
.....
5. No one told me about the change of plan. (know)
.....

6. His friend was the winner of the competition. (won)

.....

7. Is it a fact that the Romans built this wall? (did)

.....

- Exercise 3:

Lorna Bright is a long-distance walker. Look at this part of her diary describing a morning's walk along coast. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

It was a fine day (►) *when* I started out on the last part of my walk around the coast of Britain. The sun was (1)....., and a light wind (2).....blowing from the south-west. I was pleased that it (3) raining. I knew by now that I (4) like rain. In fact I (5) it. I (6) along the cliff top and then down into the lovely little fishing village of Wellburn, past a café where people (7)..... having morning coffee. Three miles past Wellburn I (8)..... down for five minutes and (9) a drink. Now it (10)..... getting warmer, so I (11) off one of my sweaters. I (12) stop for long because I (13) to reach Seabury by lunch-time. (14) I finally got there, it (15)just after half past twelve.

- Exercise 4:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~The hotel were very quiet.~~

The hotel was very quiet.

1. ~~It was peaceful, and the birds were sing.~~

.....

2. ~~I washed my hair when the phone rang.~~

.....

3. ~~You came not to the club last night.~~

.....

4. ~~It taked ages to get home.~~

.....

5. ~~We tried to keep quiet because the baby sleeping.~~
.....
6. ~~As I was watching him, the man was suddenly running away.~~
.....
7. ~~We pass a petrol station five minutes ago.~~
.....
8. ~~Everything was seeming OK.~~
.....
9. ~~Where bought you that bag?~~
.....
10. ~~When I heard the alarm, I was leaving the room immediately.~~
.....

- Exercise 5:

Complete the sentences. Put in the correct form of each verb. Use the past continuous or past simple.

► When Paul *arrived* (arrive) home, Nancy *was talking* (talk) to someone on the phone. Paul *started* (start) to get the tea.

1. She (lie) in the bath when the phone (ring). It..... (stop) after a few rings.
2. It(be) cold when Robert and Tracy (leave) the house that day, and a light snow.....(fall).
3. Your friend who..... (come) here the other day..... (seem) very nice. I..... (enjoy) meeting her.
4. When I..... (see) the man, he..... (stand) outside the bank. He..... (have) a black baseball cap on.
5. When he..... (open) the cupboard door, a pile of books..... (fall) out.
6. I..... (walk) along the street when I suddenly..... (feel) something hit me in the back. I..... (not / know) what it was.
7. They (go) to London yesterday, but on the way they (hear) about a bomb scare in Oxford Street. So they (drive) back home straightaway.
8. Something very strange (happen) to me on my way home from work yesterday afternoon. I (drive) along the bypass at the time. Suddenly I(see) my mother in the seat beside me. But she died three years ago.

BÀI 11:

THE PRESENT PERFECT

(Hiện tại hoàn thành)

- Exercise 1:

Add a sentence. Use the present perfect.

► I'm tired.

(I / walk / miles) *I've walked miles.*

1. Tracy's computer is working now.

(she / repair/it).....

2. It's cooler in here now.

(I/ open / the window)

3. The visitors are here at last.

(they / arrive)

4. Jason's car isn't blocking us in now.

(he / move / it).....

5. We haven't got any new videos.

(we / watch / all these).....

- Exercise 2:

Look at the pictures and say what the people have done.

Use these verbs: *break, build, catch, see, win*

Use these objects: *a film, a fish, a house, his leg, the gold medal*



► *She's won the gold medal.*

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....

- Exercise 3:

John and Maria are decorating their house. Put in the verbs. Use the present perfect.

Maria: How is the painting going? (►) *Have you finished?* (you / finish)

John: No, I haven't. Painting the ceiling is really difficult, you know.

(1) (I / not / do) very much. And it looks just the same as before. This new paint (2) (not / make) any difference.

Maria: (3) (you / not / put) enough on.

John: (4) (I / hurt) my back. It feels bad.

Maria: Oh, you and your back. You mean (5) (you / have) enough of decorating. Well, I'll do it. Where (6) (you / put) the brush?

John: I don't know. (7) (it / disappear). (8) (I / look) for it, but I can't find it.

Maria: You're hopeless, aren't you? How much (9) (you / do) in here? Nothing! (10) (I / paint) two doors.

John: (11) (I / clean) all this old paint around the window. It looks much better now, doesn't it?

Maria: (12) (we / make) some progress, I suppose. Now, where (13) (that brush / go)? Oh, (14) (you / leave) it on the ladder, look.

BÀI 12:

THE PRESENT PERFECT: JUST, ALREADY, YET; FOR and SINCE
(Hiện tại hoàn thành với just, already, yet, for và since)

 - Exercise 1:

Write replies using the present perfect and 'just'.

Use these past participles: *checked, eaten, made, remembered, rung, tidied*

- We must find out the address. ~ It's all right, *I've just remembered it.*
1. The children's room looks neat. - Yes, they've
 2. Is Edwin making some coffee? - It's ready.....
 3. What happened to that chocolate? - Sorry,.....
 4. Has Rita got all the answers right? - Yes,.....
 5. Have you told your brother? - Yes, I've.....

 - Exercise 2:

Complete the dialogue. Use the present perfect with just, already and yet.

Rita: (►) *You haven't done your project yet* (you / not do / your project / yet), I suppose.

Cindy: No, I haven't. (1)..... (I / not / start / it / yet).

Rita: (2)..... (I / just / see / Andrew), and he says (3)(he / already / do) about half of it.

Cindy: Well, he works too hard.

Rita: (4)..... (I / not / finish / my plan / yet).

Cindy: (5)..... (you / already / begin) to worry about it, haven't you? Take it easy. There's plenty of time.

Rita: (6)..... (we / already / spend) too long thinking about it. (7)..... (I / not / do / any real work / yet) and (8)..... (I / just / realize) that there are only four weeks to the end of term.

* Cindy: OK. (9)..... (I / just / decide) to start next week. Well, maybe.

- Exercise 2:

Daniel is a very hard-working student. It's midnight and he is still working at his computer. Write sentences with the present perfect and *for* or *since*.

- be / at his computer / seven hours

He's been at his computer for seven hours.

1. not / have / any fun / a long time

2. have / a cold / a week

3. not / see / his friends / ages

4. not / do / any sport / last year

5. be / busy with his studies / months

- Exercise 4:

Complete the sentences.

- You ought to wash the car. You haven't *washed it for* ages.

- I'd better have a shower. I haven't *had one since* Thursday.

1. I think I'll ring my girlfriend. I haven't.....the weekend.

2. We're going to see some old friends. We haven't.....
five years.

3. Let's watch a video, shall we? We haven't.....quite a while.

4. We could have a barbecue. We haven't..... last summer.

5. Shall we play tennis? We haven't..... our holiday.

BÀI 13:

PRESENT PERFECT or PAST SIMPLE?
(Hiện tại hoàn thành hay quá khứ đơn?)

 - Exercise 1:

Put in the correct verb form.

- ▶ *I've done* (I / do) all the housework. The flat is really clean now.
- ▶ A young couple *bought* (buy) the house next door. But they didn't live there long.
 1. Our visitors..... (arrive). They're sitting in the garden.
 2. There's still a problem with the television. Someone..... (repair) it, but then it broke down again.
 3. (She / lose) her bank card. She can't find it anywhere.
 4. The match..... (start). United are playing well.
 5. Her sister (run) away from home. But she came back two days later.
 6. Arnold..... (earn) some money last week. But I'm afraid he's already spent it all.
 7. (they / plant) an apple tree in the garden. Unfortunately it died.
 8. Prices..... (go) up. Everything is more expensive this year.
 9. Someone..... (turn) on the hi-fi. What's that song called?
 10. (She / phone) the office at eleven to speak to the manager, but he isn't there today.
 11. (I / make) a cake. Would you like a piece?
 12. The runner Amos Temila (break) the world record for the 1500 metres in Frankfurt. Then two days later in Helsinki Lee Williams ran it in an even faster time.

 - Exercise 2:

Things that have happened today are on the radio and TV news. Give the news using the present perfect and past simple.

- ▶ the Prime Minister / visit Luton University / speak to students there earlier today

The Prime Minister has visited Luton University. He spoke to students there earlier today.

1. the train drivers / go on strike / stop work / at twelve o'clock
.....
2. the Queen / arrive in Toronto / fly there / in an RAF aircraft
.....
3. two men / escape from Parkhurst Prison / get away / during the night
.....
4. the actor Howard Bates / die in a car accident / his car / crash into a wall
.....
5. Linda Jones / win the women's marathon / run it / in 2 hours 27 minutes
.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations.

► Jack: This car is filthy. I haven't been to the car wash for about a year.

Thomas: What! You mean it's twelve months *since you last went* to the car wash?

1. Anna: I haven't used my camera recently. June was the last time I took a photo.

Henry: Really? I'm surprised you..... June.

2. Rita: I haven't seen Andrew for weeks.

Tony: Nor me. It's..... him.

3. Thomas: What about a game of cards? We haven't played since your birthday.

Howard: Really? You mean my birthday..... cards.

4. Anna: I feel terrible. It's three days since I ate anything.

Susan: What did you say? You..... three days?

- Exercise 4:

Complete this letter to a newspaper. Put in the present perfect or past simple.

A few days ago I (►) *learned* (learn) that someone plans to knock down the White Horse Inn. This pub (►) *has been* (be) the centre of village life for centuries. It (1)..... (stand) at our crossroads for 500 years (2)..... (be) famous in the old days, and Shakespeare or (3)..... (stay) there, they say. I (4)..... (live) in Brickfield most of my life. The villagers (5)..... (know) about the plans for less than a week and already there's a 'Save Our Pub' campaign. Last week (6)..... (be) happy, but this week we're angry. We will stop the thing you'll see.

- Exercise 5:

Look at each conversation and choose the best sentence, a) or b).

- Have you heard about the woman walking across the US? - Yes, she has reached the Rockies.
- a) ☒ The walk is continuing.
b) ☐ The walk has finished.
1. Have you ever played beach volleyball? - Yes, we played it on holiday.
a) ☐ The holiday is still going on.
b) ☐ The holiday is over.
2. Did you know old Mr. Green? - No, I never met him.
a) ☐ Mr. Green is probably alive.
b) ☐ Mr. Green is probably dead.
3. Wayne Johnson is a great footballer. - Yes, he's scored 200 goals for Manchester United.
a) ☐ Wayne Johnson still plays for United.
b) ☐ Wayne Johnson has left United.

- Exercise 6:

Put in *this*, *last*, *today* or *yesterday*.

- Last month prices went up, but *this* month they have fallen a little.
1. It's been dry so far week, but week was very wet.
2. I went shopping earlier and spent all the money I earned
3. We didn't have many visitors year. We've had a lot more year.

4. I don't feel so tired now. We got up quite late..... morning. I felt really tired..... when we got up so early.

 - Exercise 7:

Put in the verbs.

Bob: (►) *Have you heard* (you / hear) the news about David?

Jane: No. (1)..... (what / happen)?

Bob: (2)..... (he / have) an accident. He was walking down some steps. (3)..... (he / fall) and (4)..... (break) his leg.

Jane: Oh, how awful! When (5)..... (it / happen)?

Bob: Yesterday afternoon. Melanie (6)..... (tell) me about it last night.

Jane: Last night! (7)..... (you / know) about it last night, and (8)..... (you / not / tell) me!

Bob: Well, (9)..... (I / not / see) you last night. And (10)..... (I / not / see) you today, until now.

Jane: I hope he's all right. (11)..... (he / have) lots of accidents, you know. (12)..... (he / do) the same thing about two years ago.

TEST 3

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in the past participles of the verbs in brackets.

► We've *found* (find) all the answers.

1. Have you..... (wash) the car?
2. You haven't..... (eat) very much.
3. They've (open) a new supermarket.
4. You've (write) it in pencil.
5. I've (make) the sandwiches.
6. We've (have) our lunch.
7. United have (score) a goal.
8. The balloon has (land) in a field.
9. Who's..... (break) this glass?
10. It's warm because the heating has..... (be) on.
11. Have you (sell) your flat yet?
12. I've (finish) that job at last.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the second sentence so that it follows on from the first. Use the present perfect.

► My hair is tidy now. I've *brushed* my hair.

1. The door is open. Someone the door.
2. This is Janet's drawing, look. Janet..... a picture.
3. The calculator is broken. Someone..... the calculator.
4. United are the winners. United..... the game.
5. There's no more wine in the bottle. We..... all the wine.
6. The floor is clean now. I..... the floor.
7. I know my number now. I..... my number by heart.
8. The guests are here now. The guests.....
9. I'm still working on the computer. I..... with the computer yet.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Decide which word is correct.

▶ I'd like to borrow this book. Has Emma read it *yet*?

- a) done b) for c) just d) yet

1. Jack writes very quickly. He's..... finished his essay.

- a) already b) been c) for d) yet

2. What are you going to do? - I don't know. I haven't decided.....

- a) just b) long c) since d) yet

3. I've..... to Paris. I went there in June.

- a) been b) gone c) just d) yet

4. Have you..... done any skiing?

- a) ever b) for c) just d) long

5. My girlfriend hasn't rung..... week.

- a) for b) last c) since d) this

6. I haven't seen that coat before. How..... have you had it?

- a) already b) for c) long d) since

7. The girls have..... to the cinema. They won't be back until ten o'clock.

- a) already b) been c) gone d) just

8. I haven't seen my parents..... last Christmas.

- a) already b) before c) for d) since

9. This is the first..... I've ever lived away from home.

- a) already b) since c) that d) time

10. This programme must be new. I'veseen it before.

- a) ever b) never c) since d) yet

📖 - Exercise 4: Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary have or has out of the sentence and write it in the space.

▶ Janet has lost her keys. She can't find them anywhere.

✓

▶ Christopher ~~has~~ hurt his hand, but it's OK now.

has

1. The directors have arrived an hour ago, but they didn't stay long

2. It's raining, and Jim has left his umbrella behind, look.

3. It's a long time since your friends have last visited us.

4. None of you have called me for weeks. Aren't we friends anymore?....
5. We can play football now. The others have finished.
6. The company has bought some land, but then it sold it.
7. The computer isn't on now. Someone has turned it off.
8. Tracy has posted the parcel. It's on its way to you.
9. Several bombs have gone off in the city centre. It has happened a
hour ago.
10. Simon has left. He and Oliver have left after lunch.

- Exercise 5:

Put in the present perfect or past simple of the verbs in brackets.

- ▶ I've had (have) these shoes since my eighteenth birthday.
 - ▶ I tidied (tidy) my desk, but now it's in a mess again.
1. The last time I..... (go) to London was in August.
 2. I'd like to meet a ghost, but I..... (never / see) one.
 3. I've finished my homework. I..... (do) it before tea.
 4. And the race is over! And Fiona Simpson (win) in record time!
 5. I (work) for a computer company for two year. That was after college.
 6. What time (you / get) to work this morning?
 7. Simon..... (be) to Greece six times. He loves the place.
 8. The President..... (come) out of the building and is going to make a speech.
 9. You won't believe this, but I've got some tickets for the concert. - Oh well done. How..... (you / get) them?
 10. Of course I can ride a bike. But I..... (not / ride) one for years
 11. Ellen Monroe..... (be) in about thirty films.
 - 12..... (you / ever / bake) your own bread? - No, but I might try some time.
 13. Nancy..... (be) very ill three years ago.
 14. Robert has left a message for you. He..... (ring) last night.
 - 15..... (you / see) the news today? - No, not yet. I'll watch it at ten
 16. We moved here in 1993. We..... (be) here a long time now.

BÀI 14:

THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS
(Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

 - Exercise 1: Put in the verbs. Use the present perfect continuous.

Susan: Sorry I'm late..

Vicky: It's OK. (►) *I haven't been waiting* (I/ not / wait) long. What (1)..... (you / do)?

Susan: I've been with Mrs. King. (2)..... (she / help) me with my English.

Vicky: Your English is very good. You don't need lessons, surely.
How long (3)..... (you / study) English?

Susan: Er, nice years now. But my accent wasn't so good before I came to England. (4)..... (I / try) to improve it. I think (5)..... (it / get) better lately.

Vicky: Your accent is fine, Susan. Honestly.

 - Exercise 2: Say what these people have been doing. Use these verbs: *argue, cook, drive, wait, work*



► Daniel is tired because *he's been working* all day.

1. Henry and Linda are upset because.....
2. Jim is hot because
3. Martin feels very stiff because all day.
4. Edwin is annoyed. a long time for Jane.

 - Exercise 3:

What could you say in these situations? Write sentences with the present perfect continuous and a phrase with for. Use these verbs: play, read, swim, talk, travel, work

- A video is on. It began two hours ago, and it hasn't finished yet.
The video has been playing for two hours.

1. Brian went into the water an hour ago. He doesn't want to come out yet.
.....
2. Your friends started their journey around the world two months ago.
They've gone about halfway now.
.....
3. Jack got to the office early this morning. Ten hours later he's still there.
.....
4. Mary rang Vicky forty minutes ago, and they're still on the phone.
.....
5. David has got an interesting book. He started it quite a long time ago.
Ask him how long.
.....

BÀI 15

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS or
SIMPLE?

(Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn hay hiện tại hoàn thành?)

 - Exercise 1:

Look at these conversations and put in the correct form of the verb.
Use the present perfect continuous or simple.

▶ Susan: I feel really tired.

Jim: It's because *you've been doing* (you / do) too much.

Susan: Well, at least *I've finished* (I / finish) that report now, and I can relax.

1. Jason: Someone..... (leave) the ladder outside, look.

Laura: I expect that's Mike..... (he / clean) the windows.
don't think(he / finish) yet.

2. Anna: You've got mud on your shoes.

David: It's all right, I'll take them off. (I / work)
the garden.

Anna: Yes, it looks a lot tidier. Well done.(you / do)
a good job.

3. Thomas:..... (I / hear) that you and Harriet are building
garage. How long (you / do) that?

Henry: Oh, for about a month now.(we / do) about
half of it.

 - Exercise 2:

What would you ask in these situations? Use the present perfect continuous or simple.

▶ Your friend is wearing glasses. You've never seen him with glasses before. Ask him how long.....

How long have you been wearing glasses?

▶ Nick is playing computer games. Ask him how many...

How many computer games have you played?

1. You meet a group of people walking across country. Ask them how many miles.....

2. Some workmen are digging up the road outside Sarah's house. Ask her how long
3. Laura is taking lots of photos of you and your friends. Ask her how many
4. You have just woken up from an afternoon sleep and seen that it is raining. Ask your friend how long.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put the verbs in the present perfect continuous or simple.

Linda: What are you doing, Tommy? (►) *You've been* (you / be) in here for ages. You're making an awful mess.

Tommy: (1)..... (I / clear) out this cupboard most of the afternoon. There's a lot of old stuff in here. (2) (I/ find) them. They look like.....

Linda: (3)..... (you / sit) there staring at those old boots for the last five minutes. (4)..... (I/ watch) you. (5)..... (you / be) in a dream.

Tommy: They're football boots. (6)..... (I/ have) them since I was about sixteen. (7)..... (they / be) in here for years.

Linda: Well, throw them away. And what about that tennis racket? Is that yours?

Tommy: No, it must be yours. (8)..... (I/ never / have) a tennis racket.

BÀI 16:

THE PAST PERFECT

(Quá khứ hoàn thành)

- Exercise 1:

Read about each situation and then tick the right answer.

- Two men delivered the sofa. I had already paid for it.
Which came first, a) ☐ the delivery, *or* b) ☒ the payment?
- The waiter brought our drinks. We'd already had our soup.
Which came first, a) ☐ the drinks, *or* b) ☐ the soup?
 - I'd seen the film, so I read the book.
Did I first a) ☐ see the film, *or* b) ☐ read the book?
 - The programme had ended, so I rewound the cassette.
Did I rewind the cassette a) ☐ after, *or* b) ☐ before the programme ended?
 - I had an invitation to the party, but I'd arranged a trip to London.
Which came first, a) ☐ the invitation, *or* b) ☐ the arrangements for the trip?

- Exercise 2:

Add a sentence with the past perfect using the notes.

- Jane looked very suntanned when I saw her last week.
She'd just been on holiday. (just / be on holiday)
- We rushed to the station, but we were too late.
.....(the train / just/go)
 - I didn't have an umbrella, but that didn't matter.
.....(the rain/stop)
 - When I got to the concert hall, they wouldn't let me in.
.....(forget/my ticket)
 - Someone got the number of the car the raiders used.
.....(steal/it/a week before)
 - I was really pleased to see Vicky again yesterday.
.....(not see/her/for ages)

6. Luckily the flat didn't look too bad when my parents called in.
 (just /clean/it)
7. The boss invited me to lunch yesterday, but I had to refuse the invitation.
(already /eat /my sandwiches)

📌 - Exercise 3:

Put the verbs in the present perfect (have done) or past perfect (had done).

- ▶ It isn't raining now. It's *stopped* (stop) at last.
- ▶ We had no car at that time. We'd *sold* (sell) our old one.
 1. The park looked awful. People..... (leave) litter everywhere.
 2. You can have that newspaper. I..... (finish) with it.
 3. There's no more cheese. We..... (eat) it all, I'm afraid.
 4. There was no sign of a taxi, although I..... (order) one half an hour before.
 5. This bill isn't right. They..... (make) a mistake.
 6. I spoke to Mary at lunch-time. Someone..... (tell) her the news earlier.
 7. I was really tired yesterday. I..... (have) a hard day.
 8. Don't you want to see this programme? It..... (start).
 9. It'll soon get warm in here. I..... (turn) the heating on.
 10. At last the committee were ready to announce their decision.
 They..... (make) up their minds.

BÀI 17:

THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

(Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

📖 - Exercise 1: Complete the conversation. Put in the past perfect continuous of the verbs.

Cheryl: How was your job interview?

Tracy: Awful. I felt terribly nervous. (►) *I'd been worrying* (I / worry) about it all week. And I was tired because (1)..... (I / work) on my project the night before. (2)..... (I / not look) forward to the interview at all.

Cheryl: So what happened?

Tracy: The woman interviewing me was half an hour late because (3)..... (she / deal) with an unexpected problem, she said. (4)..... (I / wait) ages, and I'd got even more nervous.

Cheryl: How did the interview go?

Tracy: Well, I tried to sound confident. (5)..... (I / read) a book that said that's what you have to do in job interviews. But I don't know if I gave the right answers.

📖 - Exercise 2

Add a sentence with the past perfect continuous to explain why. Look at the pictures to find the reasons.



► Carol got burnt. *She'd been lying in the sun.*

1. Vicky looked upset.....
2. Daniel was stopped by the police.

3. The children started a fire.
4. A young man was struck by lightning.

 - Exercise 3:

Put in the correct form of the verbs.

► Albert could hear shouts from the flat next door. His neighbours *were arguing* (argue) again.

1. Alice went into the sitting-room. It was empty, but the television was still on. Someone..... (watch) it.
2. I..... (play) tennis, so I had a shower. I was annoyed because I..... (not win) a single game.
3. The walkers finally arrived at their destination. They..... (walk) all day, and they certainly needed a rest. They..... (walk) thirty miles.
4. When I saw Brian last week, he said he (stop) smoking. But when I saw him three days later, he (smoke) a cigarette. He looked rather ashamed.
5. I really must go and see the dentist. One of my teeth..... (ache) for weeks.
6. When Lucy arrived at Bob's place, he..... (lie) on the sofa reading a detective novel. He..... (buy) it at the second-hand bookshop, and he (read) it for most of the afternoon.

TEST 4

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb.

► A: Are you ready?

B: It won't be a moment. *I'm doing* (I / do) my hair.

1. A: Could you tell me your address?

B: Well, (I / live) in a friend's house at the moment.

Luckily (I / find) a place of my own now, but I can't move in until next week.

2. A: Is this your CD?

B: No, it isn't mine..... (I / think)..... (it / belong) to David.

3. A: Can I borrow your calculator, please?

B: Well, (I / use) it to work out these figures at the moment. (I / want) to finish doing them, now that (I / start).

4. A: Why can't you wash your dirty plates sometimes?..... (you / leave) them in the sink most of the time.

B: OK, sorry. The last few weeks..... (I / have) so little time..... (I / rush) around all the time.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

One day a man was (►) *walking* past a house in Bournemouth when he (1)..... a woman's voice shouting for help. The man (2)..... someone (3)..... probably trying to murder her. He ran to a phone box and (4)..... the police. The police came quite quickly, but by now the shouting had (5)..... However, the man (6)..... quite sure that he (7)..... heard cries for help. When the police (8)..... on the door, there was no answer. So they broke down the door and went in. Inside the house was a woman who had just

- (9)..... out of the shower. She explained to the police that she ha
 (10)..... singing along to the Beatles song 'Help!'.

- Exercise 3:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Begin with the word in brackets.

- Our trip to Asia was in October. (We...)

We went to Asia in October.

- We've had ten hours of rain. (It...)
.....
- It's the right thing to do in my opinion. (I...)
.....
- Our computer is in a different place now. (We ...)
.....
- It was breakfast-time when Rachel rang. (I ...)
.....
- Their game of badminton is always on Monday. (They...)
.....

- Exercise 4:

Write the correct answer in each space.

- This isn't my first visit to London. I've *been* here before.

a) I'm b) I've been c) I was

1. I've got my key. I found it when..... for something else.

a) I looked b) I've looked c) I was looking

2. Sorry, I can't stop now..... to an important meeting.

a) I go b) I'm going c) I've gone

3. I can't get Nancy on the phone..... all afternoon.

a) I'm trying b) I try c) I've been trying

4. The bank told me last week there was no money in my account..... it all.

a) I'd spent b) I spent c) I was spending

5. There's a new road to the motorway..... yesterday.

a) They'd opened b) They opened c) They've opened

📖 - Exercise 5:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ▶ Jack has changed his mind about next weekend. ✓
- ▶ We ~~were~~ enjoyed the holiday very much. *were*
- Mary is practising on the piano.
 - It was lucky that we had been decided to buy our tickets in advance.
 - We were riding our bikes when suddenly I was felt a pain in my leg.
 - We are go camping for three weeks every summer.
 - They have planted some new trees last year.
 - I suddenly realized I had been walking in the wrong direction.
 - Did you know that Emma has been won a prize?
 - No one told me that the goods had arrived the week before.

📖 - Exercise 6:

Complete the news report. Put each verb into the correct form.

The actress Vanessa Kemp (▶) *has disappeared* (disappear). Yesterday she (1)..... (fail) to arrive at the Prince Charles Theatre in London's West End for her leading role in the comedy "Don't look now!". Ms Kemp, who (2)..... (live) in Hampstead, (3)..... (leave) home at four o'clock yesterday afternoon for the theatre, a journey she (4)..... (make) several times the week before. Two people who (5)..... (walk) past her home at the time (6)..... (see) her leave. But no one (7)..... (see) her since then. At half past seven she still (8)..... (not / arrive) at the theatre. At eight o'clock the theatre manager had to break the news to the audience, who

(9)..... (wait) patiently for the play to start. Since yesterday, theatre staff and friends (10)..... (try) to contact Ms Kemp, but they (11)..... (have) no success so far. The police (12)..... (take) the matter seriously, but they (13)..... (believe) that she is unlikely to be in any danger. Her friends all (14)..... (want) to hear from her soon.

BÀI 18:

WILL and SHALL

(Will và shall)

 - Exercise 1: Read the conversation. Which replies are statements about the future and which are instant decision?

► I must fix this shelf some time. ~ We'll be dead before then. *future*

1. I haven't got any transport. ~ Oh, we'll give you a lift.....
2. I'm worried about the exam. ~ Oh, you'll be all right.
3. We're lost a tennis ball. ~ I'll help you look for it.....
4. Shall we go out tonight. ~ I'll be too tired, I think.....
5. What would you like? ~ I'll have an orange juice, please.....

 - Exercise 2: Say what your decision is in these situation, or what you offer to do. Use these verbs: *answer, carry, have, post, shut*

► Your friend has written a letter. You are going to walk into town past the post office.

I'll post it for you.

1. You are meeting a friend at the station. He has two suitcases. There's a bag, too.
.....
2. The choice on the menu is fish or chicken. You hate fish.
.....
3. The phone is ringing. You are the nearest person to it.
.....
4. You and your friend have come into the room. The window is open, and it is cold.
.....

 - Exercise 3:

Use the notes to write about what will happen next weekend.

► it/ be/ warm/ tomorrow *It will be warm tomorrow.*

1. Cindy/ not do/ any work

2. Anna/ study/ all weekend
3. Fiona/ be/ annoyed
4. Arthur/ not put up/ the shelves
5. Susan's party/ be/ fun
6. Jack/ watch/ the match

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Put in *will* or *shall*

Christina: What (►) *shall* we do today?

Laura: It would be nice to go out somewhere. The forecast says temperatures (1)..... rise to thirty degrees.

Alice: (2)..... we go for a walk?

Christina: That sounds a bit boring. What about the seaside? We could get a bus.

Alice: How much (3)..... it cost? I haven't got very much money.

Laura: It isn't far. It doesn't cost much.

Alice: Everywhere (4)..... be so crowded today because it's a holiday. The journey (5)..... take ages.

Christina: Come on, Laura. (6)..... we leave Alice behind if she's going to be so miserable?

BÀI 19:

WILL and BE GOING TO

(Will và be going to)

- Exercise 1:

Complete the conversations. Put in *will* or *be going to* with the verbs.

- ▶ Cindy: Would you like tea or coffee?
Emma: Oh, I *will have* (have) coffee, please.
- ▶ Carol: I'm just going out to get a paper.
Vanessa: What newspaper *are you going to buy* (you/ buy)?
- 1. David: I'm going to miss a good film on TV because I'll be out tonight.
Cindy: I.....(video) it for you, if you like.
- 2. Laura: Have you got a ticket for the play?
Alison: Yes, I..... (see) it on Friday.
- 3. Jim: The alarm's going. It's making an awful noise.
Albert: Ok, I.....(switch) it off.
- 4. Mike: Did you buy this book?
Sharon: No, Paula did. She.....(read) it on holiday.

- Exercise 2:

What would you say? Use *will* or *be going to*.

- ▶ You suddenly decide you want to invite Paula for a meal.
Your friend: Did you know Paula *will be* in town next weekend?
You: No, I didn't. *I'll invite her for a meal.*
- 1. You know that your friend's sister has decided to get married.
Your friend: Have you heard about my sister?
You : Well, I heard that.....
- 2. You predict the landing of aliens on the earth in the next ten years.
Your friend: All this talk about aliens is complete nonsense, isn't it?
You : Is it? I think.....
- 3. You hate dogs. Dogs always attack you if they get the chance.
Your friend: That dog doesn't look very friendly.
You : It's coming towards us.....

4. You want to express your intention to look round the museum.

Your friend: Do you have any plans for this morning?

You : Yes,.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the news report about the village of Brickfield. Use *will* or *be going to*. Sometimes either is possible.

We have learned this week that the local council has plans for Westside Park in Brickfield. The council (►) *is going to sell* (sell) the land to a builder, Forbes and Son. The plans are all ready. “(1)..... (we/ build) fifty houses,” said Mr. Forbes. “In two years’ time everything (2).....(be) finished. I’m sure people (3)..... (like) the houses. Most of them (4).....(be) for young families. And we intend to take care of the environment. (5).....(we/ not/ cut) down all the trees, only a few of them.” But people living near the park are angry. “This is a terrible idea. We’re all against it,” said Mrs. Carol Brent. “(6).....(we/ have) a protest march on Saturday. I expect everyone in Brickfield (7).....(be) there. We’ve reached our decision. (8).....(we/ stop) this plan.”

BÀI 20:

PRESENT TENSES FOR THE FUTURE

(Các thì hiện tại mang nghĩa tương lai)

- Exercise 1:

Read the conversation and say if the verb refers to the present or the future.

Daniel: (►) What are you reading, Sally?

Sally: Oh, it's a guidebook to Brazil. (1) I'm going there next month. (2) My sister and I are having a holiday there. (3) I'm really looking forward to it. (4) We're spending three weeks in Rio. (5) So I'm finding out about all the things we can do there.

► *present*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

- Exercise 2:

For each situation write a sentence with the present continuous. Use the verbs in brackets.

► Jack and Tracy have accepted an invitation to Tom's party next week.
(go)

They're going to Tom's party next week.

1. Alice has agreed to be in the office on Friday. (work)
.....
2. Vicky has just bought a plane ticket to Cairo dated 15 June. (fly)
.....
3. Bob has arranged a meeting with his boss at four o'clock this afternoon. (see)

-
4. Jim and Simon have booked a tennis court for tomorrow afternoon.
(play)
-

- Exercise 3:

Put the verbs into the present continuous or the present simple.

Katherine: (►) *Are you doing* (you / do) anything tonight?

Thomas: Yes, (1)..... (I / go) to the station to meet my friend Richard. (2)..... (he / stay) here for the weekend, remember? His train (3)..... (get) in at eight fifteen.

Katherine: Oh, of course. I'd forgotten about that.

Thomas: Maybe we'll see you later. What (4)..... (you / do) tonight?

Katherine: Oh, (5)..... (I / go) to the cinema with Vicky and Rachel and a couple of other people. The film (6)..... (finish) quite early, so (7)..... (we / go) to a pizza place afterwards.

 - Exercise 4: Complete these sentences on the news. Some are spoken-by the newsreader in the studio and some by reporters on the spot. Use *be to* or *be about to* with the verbs in brackets.

► The new museum *is to open* (open) in the autumn.

► The Prime Minister is at the microphone now. He *is about to start* (start) speaking.

- The leading runner is nearly there now. She..... (win) the race.
- Taxes..... (go) up from next July.
- The US President..... (visit) England in the new year.
- The riot isn't over yet, but the police are here. They..... (move) in.
- The talks on world trade..... (take) place later this year.

TEST 5

- Exercise 1:

Put in the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

- I don't want a steak. I think I'll *have* the chicken.
1. There's a fireworks display tomorrow. Sarah is..... to watch it.
 2. We're at that table in the corner..... you join us?
 3. I'm seeing the boss this afternoon. But I must study this report before I..... her.
 4. There will be drinks at the reception, but there will..... be any food.
 5. The European heads of state are..... meet in Brussels on 3. October.
 6. It's a lovely day..... we go for a walk?
 7. Her birthday..... on a Sunday next year.
 8. My brother is engaged. He's..... married in March.
 9. You won't be allowed to go to your seat after the play..... started.
 10. Daniel's got his coat on. I think he's..... to go out.

- Exercise 2:

Write the sentences correctly.

- I'm hungry. ~~I think I hate something to eat.~~
I think I'll have something to eat.
1. You say you're getting a coach at nine. ~~What time is it getting to London?~~

 2. I'll give Robert the news. ~~I'll tell her when I'll see her this evening.~~

 3. Simon looks really tired. ~~He's about falling asleep.~~

 4. We've arranged to go out. ~~We meet in town later.~~

5. I'm going to France next week. ~~I send you a postcard.~~

 6. I'm going to get to the airport early. ~~I can read a book while I'll be waiting.~~

 7. I feel a bit tired. ~~I go to lie down.~~

 8. Why not come to the party? ~~All your friends shall be there.~~

 9. There's been a bomb warning. ~~No one can go into the building until the police will have searched it.~~

- Exercise 3:

Read the news report and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

The Maxi-Shop company is (►) *going* to build a huge new shopping centre on the edge of Millingham, it was announced yesterday. There (1)..... be at least three hundred shops, including some big department stores. When the project (2)..... complete, there (3)..... be hundreds of new jobs for local people. But not everyone is happy. "We're (4)..... to fight this plan," said a spokesperson for the local Environment Group. "Just think what is going (5)..... happen to our countryside. When shopping malls (6)..... covered the whole country, there (7)..... be no green fields left. So we're (8)..... a protest meeting tomorrow evening at the town hall. It (9)..... at half past seven." Owners of shops in the town centre are also unhappy. "The new centre (10)..... take our customers away," said one of them.

- Exercise 4:

Look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

- A: Let's go to the carnival, shall we?
 B: Yes, good idea. I expect it'll be fun.
 a) it'll be b) it's c) it's being

1. A: Could I have a word with you, please?
B: Sorry, I'm in a big hurry. My train..... in fifteen minutes.
a) is going to leave b) leaves c) will leave
2. A: Have you decided about the course?
B: Yes, I decided last Monday. for a place.
a) I apply b) I am to apply c) I'm going to apply
3. A: I'm trying to move this cupboard, but it's very heavy.
B: Well,..... you, then.
a) I help b) I'll help c) I'm going to help
4. A: Is the shop open yet?
B: No, but there's someone inside. I think.....
a) it opens b) it's about to open c) it will open
5. A: Do you mind not leaving your papers all over the table?
B: Oh, sorry. I'll take them all with me when.....
a) I go b) I'll go c) I'm going
6. A: It's a public holiday next Monday.
B: Yes, I know. anything special?
a) Are you doing b) Do you do c) Will you do

- Exercise 5:

Write the sentences using a future form of the verb. Use the word in brackets.

- Express your instant decision to take a taxi. (I'll)
I'll take a taxi.

1. Express your intention to have a rest. (going)
.....
2. Express the idea that the timetable shows the start of term on 9 September. (starts)
.....
3. Predict a world war in five years' time. (there)
.....
4. Express the idea that you and Judy have arranged a game of tennis for tomorrow. (playing)
.....
5. Give your prediction of a probable fall in prices. (probably)
.....
6. Warn your passenger about the car crashing. (going)
.....



FUTURE CONTINUOUS

(Tương lai tiếp diễn)

📖 - Exercise 1: Complete the conversation. Put in a pronoun and the future continuous form of the verb.

Henry: I'm going to go into business when I leave college. Five years from now (►) *I'll be running* (I / run) a big company. I expect (1).....(I / earn) lots of money.

Carol: I don't know what (2) (I / do). What about you, Natasha? What (3).....(you / do), do you think?

Natasha: I'm too lazy to do any work. I intend to marry someone very rich. (4)..... (I / give) dinner parties all the time. We'll have a cook (5)..... (who / do) all the work, of course. And you'll both get invitations.

Vicky: You're joking, aren't you, Natasha? I expect (6).....(you / play) in an orchestra. That's what you really want to do, isn't it?

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in the answers. People are saying what they will be doing as part of their routine.

► Mark: When are you going to the club, do you know?
(Simon goes to the club every Friday.)

Simon: I'll be going there next Friday.

1. Cheryl: Are you likely to see Jane in the near future?
(Susan sees Jane every day.)

Susan:tomorrow.

2. Cindy: Are you going to China again soon?
(Jack goes to China every summer.)

Jack:

3. Fiona: When are you going to play badminton again?
(Edwin plays badminton every weekend.)

Edwin:

4. Brian: When are you next having lunch in the canteen?
(Paul has lunch in the canteen every day.)

Paul:

 - Exercise 3:

You want to ask a friend to do something for you or to let you do something. Find out if it is convenient for your friend. Use the verbs in brackets.

- You want to have a look at your friend's magazine tonight. (read).'
Will you be reading your magazine tonight?

1. You want your friend to take your library book back today. (go to)
.....
2. You want your friend to send your best wishes to Cindy soon. (write to)
.....
3. You want to use your friend's calculator this afternoon. (use)
.....
4. You want your friend to give a photo to Henry tomorrow. (see)
.....
5. You want your friend to give you a lift to the festival. (drive)
.....
6. You want your friend to give a message to her sister soon. (phone)
.....

BÀI 22:**FUTURE PERFECT and PAST CONTINUOUS**
(**Tương lai hoàn thành và quá khứ tiếp diễn**)**□ - Exercise 1:**

Henry wants to be an artist. He's reading about a famous artist called Winston Plummer.

Winston Plummer was a great artist, who had a wonderful career. He won lots of prizes before he was twenty. By the age of twenty-five he had had his own exhibition. He was the subject of a TV documentary by the time he was thirty. By the age of thirty-five he had become world-famous. He made millions of pounds from his pictures before he was forty.

Henry is daydreaming about his own future career. What is he thinking?

► I hope *I'll have won lots of prizes* before I'm twenty.

1. Perhaps my own exhibition by the age of twenty-five.
2. I wonder if by the time I'm thirty.
3. Maybe by the age of thirty-five.
4. I hope by the age of forty.

□ - Exercise 2:

How good is your maths? Can you work out the answers?

► It's quarter to six. Mary is putting something in the oven.

It needs to be in the oven for an hour and a half. When will it have cooked?

It will have cooked at quarter past seven.

1. It's seven o'clock in the evening, and Andrew is starting to write an essay. He writes one page every fifteen minutes. He plans to finish the essay at midnight. How many pages will he have written?
He will have written pages.

2. It's Monday morning, and Sarah is travelling to work. It's twenty miles from her home to the office.
How far will she have travelled to and from work by the time she gets home on Friday?.....
3. Matthew is doing press-ups - one every two seconds. How many will he have done after five minutes?
.....

Exercise 3:

Complete the sentences. They are all about being just too late. Use *was/were going to* with these verbs: *go, get, see, pick*

- The train left just as Tony *was going to get* on it.
- I'm afraid the shop closed just as we in.
 - The phone stopped ringing just as Melanie it up.
 - We a film about the Mafia, but the tickets were sold out.

Exercise 4:

Richard is always making excuses for not doing things. Complete his sentences.

- put up the shelves / not have any screws
Sorry. I was going to put up the shelves, but I didn't have any screws.
- paint the door / not feel very well
Sorry,
 - repair the lamp / forget
Oh, yes,
 - wallpaper the bedroom / not have time
Well,

TEST 6

Exercise 1:

Read the telephone conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

Lucy: When (►) *will* I see you again?

Howard: I don't know. I'm (1)..... to be busy this week. And I'll (2)..... going to London on Saturday.

Lucy: Oh. But you (3)..... be here for my party, won't you? No, I(4)..... get back until Sunday evening.

Howard: I (5)..... going to invite you.

Lucy: Well, I'm sorry I can't come.

Howard: What (6)..... you doing in London?

Lucy: Oh, I'm just going (7)..... see one or two people. Look, I must go. I'm cooking something that I think is (8)..... to boil over.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| ► a) am | b) do | c) going | d) will |
| 1. a) being | b) going | c) shall | d) will |
| 2. a) be | b) do | c) for | d) to |
| 3. a) are | b) do | c) was | d) will |
| 4. a) about | b) aren't | c) be | d) don't |
| 5. a) be | b) have | c) was | d) will |
| 6. a) are | b) going | c) to | d) will |
| 7. a) be | b) for | c) is | d) to |
| 8. a) about | b) might | c) probably | d) will |

Exercise 2:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- They're probably going to knock the building down. ✓
- We are ~~be~~ going to get a dog soon. *be*
1. The bus is leaves at eight twenty.
 2. The doors of the theatre are about to open.
 3. The meeting will be start at half past seven.
 4. The festival is for to take place in June.
 5. My friend will be calling here tomorrow morning.
 6. We were going to eat in the restaurant, but it was full.
 7. I have to register for my course before the classes will begin.
 8. I will to have finished lunch by two o'clock.

- Exercise 3:

Put in a form of the verb. Use the future continuous (*will be doing*), the future perfect (*will have done*) or *was/were going to*.

- It's quite a long way, isn't it? We'll *have walked* (walk) about five miles by the time we get back, I'd say.
1. It'll be better if you don't ring at one o'clock. We (have) lunch then.
 2. I (drive) over and see you, but there's something wrong with the car.
 3. I've got loads of work. I expect I (work) all night. And I'm not looking forward to it.
 4. I'll have much more time next week because I (do) all my exams then.
 5. We (buy) that computer game, but they don't make it for the kind of computer we've got.
 6. I know you'll put on a wonderful show. You (have) so much practice by the time you perform it that it's sure to be brilliant.

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Use *will*, *be going to* or a *present tense*. Choose the best form. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

Dick: Hello. Where are you going?

Paul: To my evening class. I'm learning Swedish. And next week (►) *I'll have* (I / have) a chance to speak it for real. (1)..... (I/go) to Sweden for three weeks. (2)..... (I/leave) on Friday. (3)..... (I / visit) some friends there.

Dick: (4)..... (that / be) nice.

Paul: Well, I'd better hurry. My lesson (5)..... (start) at half past seven, and it's twenty-five past now.

Dick: OK. Come and see me when (6)..... (you/get) back from Sweden.

Paul: Thanks. (7)..... (I / send) you a postcard.

- Exercise 5:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

► We have decided to help with the project. (going)
We are going to help with the project.

1. We're willing to wait for you. ('ll)
.....
2. You can get off this train at Bath. (stops)
.....
3. My friend intended to meet us. (going)
.....
4. Bob's job interview is on 18 October. (having)
.....
5. Our meal will be over by eight o'clock. (finished)
.....
6. I think I'm going to go on the trip. (might)
.....
7. The fire hasn't gone out yet, but it will in a minute. (about)
.....

- Exercise 6:

Choose the correct form.

► A: I'd better go. I'm cycling home, and I haven't got any lights on my bike.

B: Oh, yes. It'll be/It'll have been dark soon.

1. A: I hear the rent on your flat is very expensive.
B: Yes it is. I'll move/I'm going to move, I've decided.
2. A: I'd like a photo of Thomas and me.
B: I'll take/I'm going to take one with your camera, then.
3. A: Have you booked a holiday yet?
B: Yes, we go/we're going to France.
4. A: What's that man doing up there?
B: Oh no! He'll jump/He's going to jump!
5. A: Can I borrow your bike on Tuesday?
B: I'm sorry, but I'll be using/I'll have used it. I always cycle to work.

BÀI 23:

THE VERB HAVE
(Động từ have)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and write positive or negative sentences with *have* or *have got*.

Use these objects: *a car, a map, a rabbit, a ticket, an umbrella*



► *He's got a ticket.* OR *He has a ticket.*

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the dialogue. Put in the negative or question forms. Use *have got* for the present and *have* for the past.

Brian: (►) *Have you got a bike?*

Jim : Yes, but I don't ride it very often.

Brian : (1)..... it..... lights on?

Jim : Yes, why?

Brian : Can I leave my bike here and take yours? Mine (2)..... any lights. It (3)..... any when I bought it meant to get some last week, but I (4)..... time.

Jim : But it's raining now. And you (5)..... a coat. I'll drive you home, Brian.

📖 - Exercise 3:

What does *have* mean in these sentences? Choose from these verbs: *drink, eat, play, receive, spend*

► Mark never has breakfast.

has = eats

1. We've just had a game of tennis.

had =

2. My father has a cup of cocoa every evening.

has =

3. We've just had three weeks in Italy.

had =

4. Claire had lots of presents on her birthday.

had =

📖 - Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Use *have/have got* or the action verb *have*.

Daisy: (►) *You've got* (you / have) an empty plate, Tony. Would you like some more food?

Tony: Oh, yes please. I must say, (1).....
(we/have) a great time. Luckily (2).....
(you/have) lots of rooms in here.

Daisy: Yes, it's a nice big flat, although (3).....(it/not /have) a balcony.

Mark: How was Brazil? (4)..... (you / have) a good holiday?

Daisy: Yes, (5)..... (I / have) a lovely time, thank you.

Tony: (6)..... (you / have) some photos here to show us?

Daisy: Yes, you must (7)..... (have) a look at them some time. But I was so busy doing things (8)..... (I/not/have) time to take very many.

BÀI 24:

SHORT FORMS, e.g. IT'S, DON'T
(Dạng rút gọn: It's, don't)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write the sentences in a more informal style, with short forms.

In a business letter

In a letter to a friend

▶ *You are quite right.*▶ *You're quite right.*

1. It is a difficult problem.
2. I have seen the results.
3. I do not have any information.
4. We have not reached a decision.
5. I am very excited about it.
6. You need not decide now.
7. It is not yet certain.
8. We will be pleased to see you.
9. Do not worry.
10. I would like to buy a new computer.
11. We are willing to help.
12. We will not know the result for some time.

📖 - Exercise 2

Complete the dialogues. Put in the short form of these phrases:
do not, he is, I am, is not, it is, what is, where is

► How are you? ~ *I'm fine, thanks.*

1..... your luggage? ~.....in Los Angeles.

2. Do you like this shirt? ~ No, I..... It..... my style.

3..... that smell? ~ My husband.....doing a chemical experiment.

- Exercise 3:

Write the forms in full. Use *is, has, had* or *would*.

► What's your name?

What is your name?

1. I'd like a coffee, please.

.....

2. There's been an accident.

.....

3. That's correct.

.....

4. I'd seen the film before.

.....

5. Who's got the key?

.....

6. We'd have stopped if we'd seen you.

.....

BÀI 25:

EMPHATIC DO

(Động từ nhấn mạnh do)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in the emphatic forms of these sentences: *I like my new portrait.*
I'm smiling. *It's foggy today.* *Yes, I'll be late home.* *Yes, I remembered the water.*



► *Yes, I will be late home.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the answers. Use *a pronoun + emphatic do + a verb*.

► Arthur: Melanie is always helping people, isn't she?

Daniel: Yes, *she does help* a lot of people.

1. John: How much did that dress cost?

Linda: Well, rather a lot.

2. Jane: Someone once told me I look like the singer Arlene Black.

Cindy: Well, a bit like her, actually.

3. David: This train doesn't stop at our station.

Andrew: Are you sure? I think there.

4. Bob: Why didn't you go to the match on Saturday?

Paul: What do you mean? to the match.

5. Fiona: Matthew and Emma never quarrel.

Alice: Oh yes,..... All the time, in fact.

 - Exercise 3:

What would you say? Use *do*, *does* or *did*.

► Tell your friend that you worry about your job prospects.

You know, *I do worry about my job prospects.*

1. Say that you finished the crossword today.

Actually,.....

2. Admit that your room needs tidying up.

I'm afraid

3. Explain to your teacher that you find the work difficult.

I'm afraid.....

4. Say that you wanted to give the course up.

Actually,.....

5. Offer your friend a chocolate.

Here you are.

6. Admit that this place depresses you.

You know,.....

BÀI 26:

QUESTIONS
(Câu hỏi)

□ - Exercise 1:

Ask Joe questions. (Look at his answers before you write the questions.)

► (where / from?) *Where are you from?*

From Toronto originally.

1. (where / live / now?) *Where* ?
~ In Vancouver.
2. (married?) ?
~ Yes.
3. (how long / married?) ?
~ Twelve years.
4. (children?) ?
~ Yes, three boys.
5. (how old / they?) ?
~ They're 4, 7 and 9.
6. (what / wife / do?) ?
~ She's a police officer.
7. (she / like her job?) ?
~ Yes, very much.

□ - Exercise 2:

Put the words in parentheses in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

► (when / was / built / this house) *When was this house built?*

1. (how / cheese / is / made)
2. (when / invented / the computer / was)
3. (why / Sue / working / isn't / today)
4. (what time / coming / your friends / are)
5. (why / was / canceled / the concert)

6. (where / your mother / was / born)
7. (why / you / to the party / didn't I come).....
8. (how / the accident / did / happen).....
9. (why / this machine / doesn't / work).....

- Exercise 3:

What would you say in these situations? Use negative yes/ no questions.

- You are surprised to learn that Rita doesn't like football.

Don't you like football, Rita?

1. You find it surprising that Melanie can't drive.
.....
2. It's a surprise that Rachel won't be at the disco.
.....
3. You find out that surprisingly Nick hasn't got a television.
.....

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversations using the words in the brackets.

- Mike: I walked home from the town centre. (take / bus)
Harriet: You mean you walked all the way? *Didn't you take a bus?*
1. Vicky: I think I'd like to lie down for a while. (feel / well)
Rachel: Oh, dear.
 2. Matthew: I'm looking forward to getting the photos you've sent. (arrive / yet)
Richard: I sent them a week ago.
 3. David: I saw Rita, but she walked straight past me. (say / hello)
Melanie: Without speaking to you?
 4. Andrew: I never sit by the pool. I hate water. (swim)
Emma: Really?

BÀI 27:

YES/ NO QUESTION (Câu hỏi Yes/No)

- Exercise 1:

Write down the use of each question. Choose from these uses: *ask for information (x3), asking permission, inviting, making a suggestion, offering, requesting (x2)*

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| ▶ Could you post this letter for me? | <i>requesting</i> |
| ▶ Can we get a number 35. bus from this stop? | <i>asking for information</i> |
| 1. Can I help you with those bags? | ..... |
| 2. Shall we stop for a rest? | ..... |
| 3. Is it Tuesday today? | ..... |
| 4. Could you wait a moment, please? | ..... |
| 5. Would you like to have tea with us? | ..... |
| 6. Will your friend be here next weekend? | ..... |
| 7. May I sit down? | ..... |

- Exercise 2:

Claude Jennings, the World Quiz Champion, is going to be on Guy chat show. Guy is wondering what to ask Claude. Read what Guy thinking and write down his questions.

- ▶ (I expect Claude has won lots of prizes.) *Have you won lots of prizes*
1. (I wonder if he's a rich man.)
 2. (Perhaps quizzes are his only hobby.)
 3. (I expect he worked hard at school.).....
 4. (I wonder if he's got any other interests.).....
 5. (I wonder if it's an interesting life.).....
 6. (Perhaps his wife asks him quiz questions.).....
 7. (And maybe he answers questions in his dreams.).....

- Exercise 3:

What would you say in these situations?

- ▶ You want to know if Tom has been to Los Angeles. Ask Susan.
Has Mark been to Los Angeles?

1. You aren't sure if Lucy and Alice are going to America. Ask them.
.....
2. You want to know if Anna plays tennis. Ask Peter.
.....
3. You are wondering if Cindy enjoyed her holiday. Ask her.
.....
4. You want to suggest to Carol that you both go for a walk.
.....
5. You need to know if Daniel will be at the club tonight. Ask him.
.....
6. You want to know if the train is on time. Ask Jim.
.....
7. You are wondering if Henry and Jane go camping. Ask Daniel.
.....
8. You want to ask Edward if you can borrow his squash racket.
.....
9. You want to know if Justin has got a motor bike. Ask him.
.....

BÀI 28:

SHORT ANSWERS, e.g. Yes, it is
(Câu trả lời ngắn: Yes, it is.)
📖 - Exercise 1:

It's eleven o'clock, and everyone has arrived at a party. Put in the short answers.

- Have you got a drink? ~ *Yes, I have*, thank you. I've just put it down somewhere.
1. Can you speak Chinese? ~....., but not very well.
 2. Is it raining outside? ~..... It's just started.
 3. Has Tom come with you? ~..... He's in hospital, actually.
 4. Did you come by car, Jack? ~..... It took ages because of all the traffic.
 5. Are those people over there your friends? ~ I don't know them at all.
 6. Do you like Japan? ~..... I'm enjoying my stay here.
 7. Is your brother here? ~..... He's away on business at the moment.
 8. Have you seen Justin recently? ~..... I think he's moved away.

📖 - Exercise 2:

It's one o'clock in the morning, and the party is in full swing. People are still talking. Put in the short answers.

- Are you English? ~ *No, I'm not*. I'm Italian. I'm from Milan.
1. Will you and Janet be here in July? ~..... We're going to France.
 2. Did you remember to bring the photos? ~..... I'll give them to you in a minute.
 3. Has Susan broken up with her boyfriend? ~..... It's all over, she told me.

4. Did you see that documentary about the ozone layer on television last night? ~..... I was working late, unfortunately.
5. Does Karen like these old songs? ~..... She loves Elvis Presley.
6. Are you and Mike staying the night here? ~..... We have to get home tonight.
7. Can we afford a taxi? ~..... It's quite a long way.
8. Are you OK, Daisy? ~..... I feel really awful.

- Exercise 3:

Which would normally be the best answer?

► Are you busy today?

- | | |
|--|---|
| a) ☐ Yes, busy. | b) ☒ Yes, I am. |
| 1. Is it too hot in here for you? | |
| a) ☐ No, it isn't. | b) ☐ No, I'm fine, thanks. |
| 2. Do you know Jane? | |
| a) ☐ Yes. | b) ☐ Yes, we live in the same building. |
| 3. Tell me, did you steal my money? | |
| a) ☐ No. | b) ☐ No, I didn't steal your money. |
| 4. Do you live on the campus? | |
| a) ☐ Yes, I do. | b) ☐ Yes, I live on it. |
| 5. Would you like to come out with us for the day? | |
| a) ☐ Yes, I would like. | b) ☐ Yes, please. |
| 6. Is it the eighteenth today? | |
| a) ☐ Yes, it is. | b) ☐ Yes, it is the eighteenth of October today. |
| 7. Did you bring my CD? | |
| a) ☐ No. | b) ☐ No, sorry. I forgot it. |
| 8. Can I carry your bags? | |
| a) ☐ No, you can't. | b) ☐ It's all right, thanks. |

BÀI 29:

WH- QUESTION
(Câu hỏi với Wh-)
📖 - Exercise 1:
What would you say in these situation?

- You are talking to a man at a party. Ask him where he works.
Where do you work?

1. You want to know what the date is today. Ask your friend.

2. You've forgotten when the course finishes. Ask your friend.

3. Your friend is having a party. You'd like to know who he has invited.
 Ask him.

4. Your favourite band are going to give a concert. Ask how you can get tickets.

5. You are in town with a friend, and you are wondering where the two of you are going to have lunch. What do you ask?

📖 - Exercise 2:

Quiz champion Claude Jennings is answering questions. Put in the words and phrases: *how far, how long, how often, how many, what colour, what kind, when, where, who*

Quiz-master: (►) *What colour is the Greek flag?*

Claude: Blue and white

Quiz-master: (1)is Melbourne?

Claude: It's in Australia.

Quiz-master: (2) centimeters are there in a kilometer?

Claude: A hundred thousand.

Quiz-master: (3)did the Second World War end?

Claude: In 1945.

Quiz-master: (4) did Romeo love?

Claude: Juliet.

Quiz-master: (5).....is Sirius?

Claude: It's a star.

Quiz-master: (6) is it from Los Angeles to
San Francisco?

Claude: About 400 miles.

Quiz-master: (7)are the Olympic Games held?

Claude: Every four years.

Quiz-master: (8)of food is Cheddar?

Claude: It's cheese.

Quiz-master: (9)..... is a game of rugby?

Claude: Eighty minutes.

- Exercise 3:

Guy is interviewing a guest his chat show. It's the actress Cindy Livingstone, who is in the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. Put in Guy's questions.

► Guy: How often do you record 'Round the Corner'?

Cindy: Oh, we record it every day. It's a full-time job, you know.

1. Guy: And it?

Cindy: In Birmingham, at the BBC studio.

2. Guy:

Cindy: How many? Well, let me see, I think we've done a thousand programmes.

3. Guy:

Cindy: I'm not going to tell you. How much money I earn is my business.

4. Guy: OK, I'm sorry.

Cindy: Oh, a long time ago. I started acting when I was twelve.

5. Guy:

Cindy: My plans for the future? I just want to go on with 'Round the Corner'.

BÀI 30:

SUBJECT/ OBJECT QUESTION

(Câu hỏi chủ ngữ/ tân ngữ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Read about the situations and answer each question in a single phrase.

► The morning after his party, Jim was cleaning up. Daniel came along and took away some empty bottles for him. Simon had just woken up after spending the night on Jim's sofa. He watched them for a while.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| a) Who helped Jim? | <i>Daniel</i> |
| b) Who did Simon help? | <i>no one</i> |
| 1. Henry wants to marry Rita. She's been out with him a few times, but really she's in love with Jack. Unfortunately he isn't in love with her. | |
| a) Who is Henry in love with? | ..... |
| b) Who is in love with Jack? | ..... |
| 2. Paul met Sarah at the airport. The plane was two hours late. On the way out they passed Paul standing at a bus stop, but they didn't notice him. | |
| a) Who met Sarah? | ..... |
| b) What was Paul waiting for? | ..... |
| 3. There was an accident at the crossroads. A lorry crashed into a van that was waiting at the lights. The van slid forward and crashed into a car. The van driver had to go to hospital. | |
| a) What hit the van? | ..... |
| b) What did the van hit? | ..... |

📖 - Exercise 2:

People aren't giving you enough information. Ask questions with **who** or **what**.

- Something has happened. ~ Oh? *What has happened?*
- I've invited someone to tea. ~ Well? *Who have you invited?*

Somebody is having a party. ~ Oh, really?
 I was reading something. ~ Oh?
 I've learnt something. ~ Go on, tell me.....
 We should do something. ~ Yes, I know, but
 Someone is looking for you. ~ Oh?
 I'm looking for someone. ~ Maybe I can help
 Vicky is planning something. ~ Is she?.....
 Somebody has moved in next door. ~ Oh, really?.....
 Something is worrying me. ~ Well, tell me.....
 I want to meet someone. ~ What do you mean?

1 - Exercise 3:

Marriet is visiting her grandmother, Mrs. Evans. It's Mrs. Evans's birthday. She can't hear very well, and she sometimes gets confused. Complete her questions.

Marriet: So ten people have sent cards.
 Mrs. Evans: (►) Pardon? How many *people have sent cards*?
 Marriet: I met David's friend yesterday.
 Mrs. Evans: (►) What? Whose *friend did you meet*?
 Marriet: You can keep those photos.
 Mrs. Evans: Photos? Which (1).....
 Marriet: Those flowers look lovely.
 Mrs. Evans: Do they? Which (2).....
 Marriet: Fifty pounds went missing.
 Mrs. Evans: Missing? How much (3)
 Marriet: I passed Mark's house earlier.
 Mrs. Evans: Pardon? Whose (4).....
 Marriet: The doctor has four children.
 Mrs. Evans: Really? How many (5)
 Marriet: Doctors earn lots of money.
 Mrs. Evans: I don't know. How much (6)
 Marriet: Mike's uncle has died.
 Mrs. Evans: What's that? Whose (7)
 Marriet: Trevor's wife is coming later.
 Mrs. Evans: Oh? Whose (8)

TEST 7 **Exercise 1:**

Put the words in the right order and ask the question.

► everyone / is / ready

Is everyone ready?

1. been / have / where / you

2. do/ postcards/ sell/ you

3. being/ calculator/ does/ this/ to/ who

4. are/ here/ how/ long/ staying/ you

5. is/ like/ new/ office/ what/ your

6. are/ flights/ full/ of/ the/ which

7. carnival / does / start / the / time / what

8. decided/ has/ holiday/ Alice/ on/ what

 Exercise 2:

Put in the correct question word or phrase.

► What did you buy? ~ A box of chocolates.

1.....is this building? ~ It's about two hundred years old.

2.....does your team play in? ~ Red.

3.....bag are you carrying? ~ Jane's.

4.....money do you earn? ~ About £280 a week.

5.....hand do you write with? ~ My right hand.

6.....of shop do you work in? ~ A toy shop.

- 7.....first stepped on the moon? ~ Neil Armstrong, wasn't it?
 8..... is your mother? ~ She's much better, thank you.
 9.....is it to the post office? ~ About two hundred metres.
 10.....do you take a holiday? ~ Once a year.
 11.....name will you give the baby? ~ We haven't thought of one yet.

- Exercise 3:

Write the sentences correctly.

- ~~Would like you to go sailing?~~ *Would you like to go sailing?*
- ~~Do you be a student here?~~
 - ~~How many cakes have eaten you?~~
 - ~~Enjoyed you your walk?~~
 - ~~Where your friends have gone?~~
 - ~~What kind music do you like?~~
 - ~~Does Jack plays football?~~
 - ~~About what are you talking?~~
 - ~~What has it happened?~~

- Exercise 4:

Read about each situation and write down the question.

- You want to know if it is raining.
Is it raining?
- You need to ask Polly where she lives.
Where do you live?
- You would like to ask Nancy where she bought her coat.

 - You want to ask Alice if Amy can swim.

 - You want to ask Jack which band he likes best.

 - On the phone you want to know who you are speaking to.

 - You need to know how much video recorders cost.

 - You are asking permission to come in.

7. You need to find out how long the journey takes.
.....

8. You want to ask Andrew what he locked the door for.
.....

9. You want to ask what happen next.
.....

10. You want to suggest that you all go out together.
.....

- Exercise 5:

Write the questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

► Henry is going to London by train.

How is Henry going to London?

1. The Smiths have got three cars.
.....

2. Alice works at the supermarket.
.....

3. Andrew is learning English because she will need it in her job.
.....

4. The film was really romantic.
.....

5. The meeting will take place next Thursday.
.....

6. Mary switched off the computer.
.....

7. Mr. Johnson's burglar alarm was ringing.
.....

8. Susan went to the dance with Arthur.
.....

BÀI 31:

SO/ NEITHER DO I and I THINK SO

(So/ Neither do I và I think so)

- Exercise 1

Andrew has just met Jane at a party. They are finding out that they have a lot in common. Put in the structures with *so* and *neither*.

Andrew: I haven't been to a party for ages.

▶ Jane: *Neither have I.* I hate crowded rooms.

▶ Andrew: Yes, *so do I.* I'm not a party-goer, really.

1. Jane: No,..... I can't make conversation.

2. Andrew:..... You know, I'm a quiet sort of person.

3. Jane: And..... I lead a pretty quiet life.

4. Andrew: Well,..... I haven't got many friends.

5. Jane:..... And I would really like a good friend.

6. Andrew: Oh,.....

- Exercise 2:

Look at the table and complete the sentences.

	Mark	Claire	Melanie	Emma
Music	✓	x	x	✓
Travel	✓	✓	x	x
Skiing	x	✓	✓	x
Cooking	x	x	✓	✓

▶ Claire can ski, and *so can Melanie*.

▶ Mark isn't keen on cooking, and *neither is Claire*.

1. Melanie doesn't like travelling much, and.....

2. Mark has got lots of CDs, and.....

3. Emma can't ski, and.....

4. Claire isn't a music lover, and.....
5. Melanie cooks quite often, and.....
6. Mark travels quite a lot, and.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete these short conversations. Put in structures with *so* or *not* and use the words in brackets.

- ▶ Cindy: Does the library open on Saturdays? (think)
Trevor: Yes, *I think so*. But I'm not absolutely certain.
- ▶ Alice: You can't go out for an evening meal wearing shorts. (guess)
Mike: *I guess not*. I'd better put some trousers on.
- 1. Susan: Will there be a lot of people at the concert tonight? (expect)
Martin:..... There aren't usually very many.
- 2. Daniel: Are you going to apply for the job? (suppose)
Vicky:..... It's the only one available.
- 3. Daniel: Do you think it's going to rain? (hope)
Melanie: Well,..... I'm just about to go out.
- 4. Peter: Will the match take place in this weather? (think)
Tom:..... In fact, I'm sure it won't.
- 5. Janet: Are my photos ready, please? (afraid)
Assistant:..... We're having problems with the machine.

BÀI 32:

QUESTION TAGS

(Câu hỏi đuôi)

- Exercise 1:

Look carefully at each statement and tag. Say if it is more likely to be a comment (with falling intonation) or a question (with rising intonation).

► This price list is up to date, isn't it? ~ Yes, it is. *a question*

1. It was a super show, wasn't it? ~ Great. I really enjoyed it.

2. These sweaters are nice, aren't they? ~ I like this one.

3. We've got time for a coffee, haven't we? ~ A quick one maybe.

4. Let me see, the bus goes at ten past, doesn't it? ~ Quarter past.

- Exercise 2:

You are at a barbecue. Add tags to help start a friendly conversation.

► These sausages are delicious, *aren't they?* ~ They certainly are.

► You haven't lived here long, *have you?* ~ No, only three months.

1. It's quite a big garden,.....? ~ Yes, there's plenty of room.

2. There aren't many people here yet,.....? ~ No, but it's still quite early.

3. You're Rachel's friend,.....? ~ Yes, I'm Vicky.

4. You came in a sports car,.....? ~ That's right.

5. These burgers look good,.....? ~ I can't wait to try them.

6. We can sit on the grass,.....? ~ I think it's dry enough.

7. The weather forecast wasn't very good,? -No, it wasn't.

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in the question tags.

Laura: You don't really want to go out with me any more, (►) *do you?*

Matthew: Of course I do. But I need a bit of time to myself sometimes.

Laura: You get plenty of time to yourself, (1).....?

Matthew: Emma, you know what I feel for you.

I've told you enough times, (2).....?

Laura: Yes, you have. And you're quite happy, (3).....?

You don't mind, (4).....? The situation doesn't bother you, (5).....?

Matthew: Why are we arguing? There's nothing to argue about, (6).....?

Laura: You can't ever look at things from my point of view, (7).....?

- Exercise 4:

What would you say in these situations? Write sentences with a question tag. Use the word in brackets.

- You want to look at a newspaper. David might have one, so ask him.
(haven't)

You haven't got a newspaper have you?

1. Suggest to Karen that you both listen to some music. (Let's)

.....

2. Warn Daniel not to do anything silly. (Don't)

.....

3. You need a train timetable. Nancy might have one, so ask her.
(haven't)

.....

4. Ask Julia to pass you the salt. (Pass)

.....

TEST 8

📖 - Exercise 1:

Read the conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

Jack: (►) *Shall* we go to the party tonight?

Anna: (1)..... giving a party?

Jack: Susan. You know her, (2)..... you?.

Anna: I'm (3)..... sure. Has she got long dark hair?

Jack: Yes, she (4)..... And she's quite tall. (5).....
you spoken to her?

Anna: No, I don't think (6)..... But I know who you mean.
There are two sisters, Susan and Jane. They're twins, aren't
(7).....?

Jack: Yes, that's right.

Anna: (8)..... one is Susan?

Jack: Oh, I (9)..... know. They both look the same. I can't
always tell them apart.

Anna: No, (10)..... can I. In any case, I haven't been invited to
the party.

Jack: That (11)..... matter.

Anna: OK. (12)..... go to it then, shall we?

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|----------|
| ► a) Do | b) Shall | c) Would |
| 1. a) What's | b) Who's | c) Whose |
| 2. a) don't | b) know | c) so |
| 3. a) isn't | b) no | c) not |
| 4. a) got | b) has | c) so |
| 5. a) Haven't | b) Having | c) Not |
| 6. a) it | b) neither | c) so |
| 7. a) it | b) not | c) they |
| 8. a) What | b) Which | c) Who |
| 9. a) don't | b) no | c) not |
| 10. a) neither | b) not | c) so |

11. a) doesn't b) isn't c) not
 12. a) Could b) Let's c) Shall

- Exercise 2:

What would you say? Use the word in brackets, and use a question form in each sentence.

- You want to suggest a game of cards. (have)

Shall we have a game of cards?

1. You are asking Tessa where her house is. (live)

2. You want Jane to tell you what she is thinking. (about)

3. You are inviting a friend to come to your room. (like)

4. You are surprised that your friend missed the football match on television. (watch)

5. You are asking permission to take a photo. (may)

6. You are looking for Polly. You are asking her friend for information. (seen)

7. You are asking Daisy about the number of letters he has written. (how)

8. You are asking Susan about the people coming to her party. (who)

9. You are asking John's wife if he cooks every day or once a week. (often)

10. You asking about the weather tomorrow. (will)

- Exercise 3:

Each of these replies is wrong. Write the correct reply.

- Is it going to snow? - ~~I'm not thinking it.~~ *I don't think so.*

- . Has the computer arrived? - ~~No, not.~~
- . Don't you like curry? - ~~Yes, I hate it.~~
- . Will you be in tonight? - ~~Yes, I expect.~~
- . Horrible weather. - ~~It isn't very nice, isn't it?~~
- . Would you like a sweet? - ~~Yes, right.~~
- . I'm quite tired now. - ~~Too am I.~~
- . You might catch my cold. - ~~I don't hope to.~~
- . The first train didn't stop. - ~~Neither the second.~~

□ - Exercise 4:

Justin at a job interview. Someone is asking him questions. Write the questions.

- Interviewer: *Where do you live?*
Justin: Oh, I live in Longtown.
- . Interviewer:
Justin: I'm twenty-three.
- . Interviewer:
Justin: Yes, I went to college.
- . Interviewer:
Justin: My interests? I don't have any, really.
- . Interviewer:
Justin: Which company? Oh, I work for BX Electric.
- . Interviewer:
Justin: Nothing. There's nothing I don't like about my job.

□ - Exercise 5:

Put in the missing word.

- *How* does this phone work? ~ You press this button.
- . The new building looks awful. ~ I agree. It..... look very nice.
- . Could you give me a receipt, please? ~ Yes, of.....
- . This chair isn't very comfortable. ~ And..... is this bed.
- . Didn't you watch 'Frankenstein' last night? ~....., I hate horror films.
- . What's this wood.....? - I'm going to make a table.
- . I didn't say the wrong thing,..... I? - Well, you weren't very polite.

7. Will there be any free gifts? - No, there.....
8. Have they sent you some money? - No, I'm afraid.....
9. Don't drop those plates,..... you? - OK, I'll be careful.
10. How..... is it to the station? - About half a mile.
11. Do those shoes fit you? - Yes, I think.....
12. Why..... we have a picnic? - Yes, good idea.
- 13..... foot is hurting? - My right one.
14. I feel a bit cold actually. - Yes,..... do I.
15. Who..... eaten their ice-cream? - Oh, it's mine. I'm just going to eat it.
- 16..... of these magazines would you like? - This one, please.

BÀI 33:

CAN, COULD and BE ABLE TO

(Can, could và be able to)

- Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and say what they *can* or *can't* do. Use these words: *climb trees*, *juggle*, *lift the weights*, *play the violin*, *walk on his hands*.



► *He can walk on his hands.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

- Exercise 2:

Harriet is visiting David, who hurt himself when he fell off a ladder. Complete the conversation using *can* or a form of *be able to*. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

Harriet: Hello, David. I'm sorry I haven't (►) *been able to come* (come) and see you before. I've been really busy lately. How are you?

David: I'm OK, thanks. (1)..... (I / walk) around now. The doctor says (2)..... (I / go) back to work soon. It'll be nice (3)..... (get) out again. I hate being stuck here like this. I haven't (4)..... (do) anything interesting.

📖 - Exercise 3:**Choose the best answer:**

- Which is closer to the meaning of the sentence "Years ago I could run a marathon"?
- a) ☐ I ran a marathon at one particular time in the past.
b) ☒ I was once fit enough to run a very long way.
1. Which of these sentences is correct?
I was ill, so I couldn't go to the party.
I was ill, so I wasn't able to go to the party..
a) ☐ Only the first one b) ☐ Only the second one c) ☐ Both of them.
2. Which is closer to the meaning of the sentence "Sarah was able to leave work early yesterday"?
- a) ☐ Sarah left work early yesterday.
b) ☐ Sarah had the opportunity to leave work early yesterday, but we don't know if she it.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Put in *could* or *was/were able to*. Sometimes either is possible. Use a negative if necessary.

- Suddenly all the lights went out. We *couldn't* see a thing.
1. The computer went wrong, but luckily Alice put it right again.
2. There was a big party last night. You..... hear the music half a mile away.
3. I learnt to read music as a child. I..... read it when I was five.
4. People heard warnings about the flood, and they..... move out in time.
5. The train was full. I..... find a seat anywhere.

BAI 34:

CAN, MAY, COULD, ALLOWED TO

📖 - Exercise 1:

How would you ask for permission in these situations?

Use *Can I...?*, *Could I...?* or *May I...?* and these verbs: *borrow, join, look at, use*

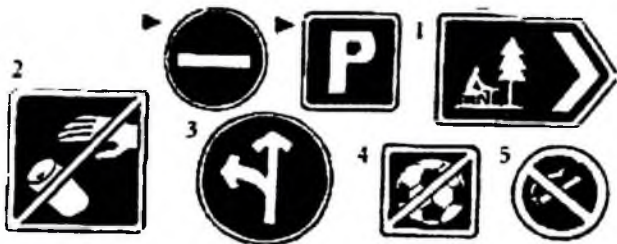
► You are at a friend's flat. You want to make a phone call.

Can I use your phone?

1. You need a calculator. The person sitting next to you has got one.
.....
2. You have gone into a café. There people who you know from work are sitting at a table. You go over to the table.
.....
3. You had to go to a lecture, but you were ill. Your friend went to the lecture and took notes. Next day you are well again and you see your friend.
.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

A policeman is telling you what the signs mean. What does he say? I Use *can* and *can't* and these verbs: drop, go, have, park, play, smoke, turn



Policeman:

► *You can't go this way.*

► *You can park here.*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Put in the correct forms.

Rita: I hear you've moved into a new flat with a couple of friends.

Emma: Yes, it's a nice flat, but the landlady is really strict. (►) We *aren't allowed to do* (we / not / allow/ do) anything. It was my birthday last month, and (1)..... (I / not / allow / have) a party.

Rita: Oh, (2)..... (we / allow / have) parties at our place, luckily. (3)..... (we / allow / do) anything, more or less. We're hoping to have an all-night party soon, but I'm not absolutely sure if (4)..... (we / allow / hold) it.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Are you asking for permission, or are you asking what the rule is? Put in *May I...?* or *Am I allowed to...?*

► *May I use your computer?*

► *Am I allowed to smoke in this cinema?*

- 1..... cross the road here?.
- 2..... ask you a personal question?
- 3..... rollerblade in this park?
- 4..... drive a car without insurance?
- 5..... read your magazine?

BAI 35:

MAY, MIGHT, COULD, MUST

 - Exercise 1:

Alice and Rachel are at college. They're looking for their friend Natasha. Complete the conversation. Use *may* or *might* and the verb in brackets. Sometimes you need to use the continuous.

Alice: I can't find Natasha. Have you seen her?

Rachel: (►) *She might be* (she / be) in the music room. (►) *She may be practising* (she / practise).

Alice: No, she isn't there. I thought (1)..... (she / be) with you.

Rachel: It's a nice day. (2)..... (she / be) on the lawn.

(3)..... (she / sit) out there reading the paper. Or

(4)..... (she / have) a coffee. (5).....

(you/find) her in the canteen.

Emma: No, I've looked there.

Rachel: Well, here comes Jessica. (6)..... (she / know).

 - Exercise 2:

Add a sentence with *may* or *might* (both are correct).

► I'm not sure if it's going to rain. *It might rain.*

► I don't know if we'll see an elephant. *We may see one.*

1. I can't say whether Daniel will win.

2. I haven't decided if I'm having a holiday.

3. I don't know if we'll get an invitation.

4. I've no idea whether Sarah will be late.

5. I'm not sure if my friends are visiting me.

 - Exercise 3:

Put in *mightn't* or *couldn't*

► I've got one or two things to do, so I *mightn't* have time to come out tonight.

► Daniel *couldn't* work as a taxi driver. He can't drive.

1. We're going to need lots of glasses. We.....
have enough, you know.
2. Tom..... be in the office tomorrow. He thinks
he's getting a cold.
3. We..... possibly have a dog, living in a small flat like this.
4. How can you work with all this noise? I.....work in
such conditions.
5. Don't ring tomorrow because I..... be in. I'm
not sure what I'm doing.

- Exercise 4:

A reporter is interviewing Mrs. Miles for a TV news programme. Complete the conversation. Put in *must*, *can't* or *might*.

Mrs Miles: My name's Nora Miles, and I'm going to do a parachute jump.

Reporter: Mrs. Miles, you're seventy-three, and you're going to jump out of an aeroplane.. You (►) *must* be mad. You
(1)..... be serious.

Mrs Miles: It really (2)..... be wonderful to look down from the sky. I've always wanted to try it.

Reporter: But anything could happen. You (3)..... be injured or even killed. I wouldn't take the risk.

Mrs Miles: Well, young man, your life (4)..... be much fun if you never take risks. You ought to try it. You never know - you (5)..... enjoy it.

Reporter: Enjoy it? You (6)..... be joking!

BAI 36

MUST and HAVE TO

(Must và have to)

Exercise 1:

Complete the conversations. Use the words in brackets and a form of *have to*.

► Mary: David's broken his leg. *He's had to go* (he's / go) to hospital.

Harriet: Oh no! How long *will he have to stay* (will / he / stay) there?

Melanie: I don't know.

1. Cindy: I parked my car outside the hairdresser's, and while I was in there, the police took the car away. I've got it back now. But..... (I / pay) a lot of money..

Henry: How much..... (you / pay)?

Claire: Two hundred pounds!

2. Trevor: That door doesn't shut properly.....(you/slam) it every time.

Laura:..... (you / will / fix) it then, won't you?

3. Jane: You're always taking exams. Why..... (you / take) so many?

Andrew:..... (I / will / take) a lot more if I want a good job.

4. Thomas: We're in a new house now..... (we / move). The old place was too small.

Nick: Did it take you long to find a house?

Mike: No, we found one easily..... (we /not/look) very hard. But it was in bad condition..... (we've / do) a lot of work on it.

5. Peter: My brother..... (start) work at five o'clock in the morning.

Melanie: That's pretty early. What time..... (he / get) up?

Nick: Half past three.

- Exercise 2:

Write a sentence with **must**, **have to** or **has to**.

- The sign says: "Passengers must show their tickets."

So *passengers have to show their tickets*.

- The children have to be in bed by nine.

Their parents said: "*You must be in bed by nine.*"

1. Alice has to get to work on time.

Her boss told her:.....

2. The police told Peter: "You must keep your dog under control."

So Peter.....

3. The pupils have to listen carefully.

The teacher says:.....

4. The new sign says: "Visitors must report to the security officer."

So now

- Exercise 3:

Put in **must** or **have to/has to**. Choose which is best for the situation.

- I *have to* go to the airport. I'm meeting someone.

1. You..... lock the door when you go out.

There've been a lot of break-ins recently.

2. David..... go to the bank. He hasn't any money.

3. I..... work late tomorrow. We're very busy in the office.

4. You really..... make less noise. I'm trying to concentrate.

5. I think you....., pay to park here. I'll just go and read that notice.

6. You really..... hurry up, Vicky. We don't want to be late.

7. I..... put the heating on. I feel really cold.

BAI 37

MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T

☞ - Exercise 1:

Put in *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

- Laura: You *needn't* take an umbrella. It isn't going to rain.
 Trevor: Well, I don't know. It might do.
 Laura: Don't lose it then. You *mustn't* leave it on the bus.
- Vicky: Come on. We..... hurry. We..... be late.
 Rachel: It's only ten past. We..... hurry. There's lots of time.
 - Claire: My sister and I are going a different way.
 Guide: Oh, you..... go off on your own. It isn't safe.
 We..... keep together in a group.
 - David: I'll put these cups in the dishwasher.
 Melanie: No, you..... put them in there. It might damage them. In fact, we..... wash them at all. We didn't use them.
 - Secretary: I..... forget to type this letter.
 Mark: Yes, it..... go in the post today because it's quite urgent. But the report isn't so important. You..... type the report today.

☞ - Exercise 2:

An old woman is talking to a reporter from her local newspaper. She is comparing life today with life in the past. Complete her sentences using *don't have to*, *doesn't have to* or *didn't have to*.

- We had to make our own fun in the old days. There wasn't any television then. These days people *don't have to make their own fun*.
- There's so much traffic now. You have to wait ages to cross the road. In those days you.....
 - I had to work long hours when I was young. But children today have it easy.
 They.....

3. My father had to work in a factory when he was twelve. Just imagine! Today a twelve-year-old child.....
4. There's so much crime today, isn't there? People have to lock their doors now. It was better in the old days when people
5. We had to wash our clothes by hand. There weren't any washing-machines, you know. Nowadays, people.....

- Exercise 3:

Write the sentences using *didn't need to* or *needn't have*.

- The previous owners had already decorated the flat, so we *didn't need to decorate it ourselves*. (we / decorate / it / ourselves).
1. Luckily we were able to sell our old flat before we bought the new one, so..... (we / borrow / any money).
 2. It was very hot yesterday, so I watered all the flowers.. And now it's pouring with rain..... (I / bother).
 3. We've done the journey much more quickly than I expected..... (we / leave / so early).
 4. A friend had already given me a free ticket to the exhibition, so..... (I / pay / to go in).
 5. Service was included in the bill,..... (you / tip / the waiter).
It was a waste of money.

3. My father had to work in a factory when he was twelve. Just ~~imagine~~
Today a twelve-year-old child.....
4. There's so much crime today, isn't there? People have to lock ~~their~~
doors now. It was better in the old days when people
5. We had to wash our clothes by hand. There weren't any ~~washing~~
machines, you know. Nowadays, people.....

- Exercise 3:

Write the sentences using *didn't need to* or *needn't have*.

- The previous owners had already decorated the flat, so we *didn't need to decorate it ourselves*. (we / decorate / it / ourselves).
1. Luckily we were able to sell our old flat before we bought the new one.
so..... (we / borrow / any money).
 2. It was very hot yesterday, so I watered all the flowers.. And now it's
pouring with rain..... (I / bother).
 3. We've done the journey much more quickly than I
expected..... (we / leave / so
early).
 4. A friend had already given me a free ticket to the exhibition.
so..... (I / pay / to go in).
 5. Service was included in the bill,..... (you / tip / the waiter)
It was a waste of money.

BAI 38

SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER

☐ - Exercise 1:

Put in *should*, *shouldn't*, *ought* or *oughtn't*. (Look for the word *to*.)

Jane: I can't come out tonight, Rachel. I (►) *ought* to do some more work. I'm behind with everything. I've got so much to do.

Rachel: You (1)..... worry so much, Vicky. Don't panic. You (2)..... to relax sometimes. You (3)..... take a break.

Jane: I know I (4)..... panic, but I do. I can't help it.

Rachel: Anyway, you're doing OK, aren't you? Your results have been good. You (5)..... be pleased. You (6)..... to invent problems for yourself.

☐ - Exercise 2:

What would you say in these situations? Add a sentence with *'d better* (*not*) and the words in brackets.

► Vicky doesn't feel well. She's got a headache. What might you say to her? (an aspirin)

You'd better take an aspirin.

1. You and David are meeting Rachel. You've both arrived, but she isn't there yet. She is usually late. (wait)
.....
2. Jane is leaving her bike outside the swimming-pool. You know it won't be safe if she leaves it unlocked. (lock)
.....
3. Some friends are going to visit you today. Your room is in a mess. What do you think? (tidy)
.....

4. Jim is giving you a lift in his old sports car. There's a speed limit, and there's a police car behind you. (too fast)
.....
5. There's an exam tomorrow. Neither you nor Susan have done any work for it. (some revision)
.....

- Exercise 3:

Add a sentence using *be (not) supposed to* and these verbs:

leave it outside, report to the police, stand in a queue, take two before meals, watch it

- You shouldn't bring your bike in here. *You're supposed to leave it outside.*
1. I've got some pills.
2. Foreign visitors can't travel freely here.
3. Be careful waiting for a bus in England.
4. This film isn't for under-sixteens.

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Use *should*, *ought to*, *had better* or *be supposed to* and the verbs in brackets. Usually there is more than one correct answer.

Vicky: What time (►) *are we supposed to be* (we / be) at the coffee morning?

Rachel: The invitation says ten o'clock.

Vicky: Well, it's ten now. (1)..... (we / hurry)
(2)..... (we / not / be) late.

Rachel: Oh, it won't matter if we're a bit late.

Vicky: I think it would be rude, wouldn't it? I don't think people
(3)..... (arrive) late when they've been invited to something.

Rachel: You worry too much. (4)..... (you / not / take) everything so seriously, Vicky. It's a coffee morning, not a job interview. (5)..... (we/not/get) there exactly on time.

BÀI 39:

ASKING PEOPLE TO DO SOMETHING

(Yêu cầu ai làm gì)

Exercise 1:

Complete these sentences and write them in: *Can I ... a fork, please?*
*Could... have a towel,...? Could you...the...for me? Would you...
 answering the phone?*



► *Could you open the door for me?*

1.
2.
3.

Exercise 2:

Mr. Atkins is the boss at Zedco. He tells everyone what to do. Complete his sentences. Use these words: *can, could, have, like, mind, must, want, wonder, would*

► *Would you mind making some tea, Susan?*

1. You..... inform me of any developments.
2. Could I..... the latest sales figures, please?
3. Would you..... to arrange a meeting some time next week, Fiona?
4. I..... everyone to read the report.
5. I see the file, please, Justin?

6. you mind putting this in writing?
7. I..... if you could translate this letter, Linda.
8. you meet our customer at the airport?

- Exercise 3:

Read about each situation and then make a request. Use the word in brackets.

- It is cold in the restaurant. Ask the waiter to shut the window. (could)
Could you shut the window, please?
1. You are buying a coat. Ask the assistant for a receipt. (can)

 2. You want to know the time. Ask someone in the street. (could)
 Excuse me.....
 3. You need someone to help you. Ask a friend. (can)

 4. You have bought some food, but you haven't got a bag. Ask the assistant. (could)

 5. You are carrying a tidy. Ask someone to clear a space on the table. (mind)

 6. You are on the phone. You want to speak the manager. (could)

BÀI 40:

SUGGESTIONS, OFFERS and INVITATIONS

(Sự gợi ý, đề nghị, lời mời)

Exercise 1:

Put the words in the right order and write in the sentences:

post / for you / I'll / that letter
have / one of these / won't / you
for a minute / shall / stop / we
a game / like / would / you



► *Won't you have one of these?*

1.
2.
3.

Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in *could*, *shall*, *will* or *would*.

Daniel: Where (►) *shall* we have our picnic, then?

Rachel: This looks all right. (1)..... we sit here?

Emma: Oh, I've forgotten the sausages. They're in the car.

Matthew: (2)..... I get them?

Emma: Oh, thanks, Matthew.

Vicky: We (3)..... sit by those trees. It looks nicer over there.

Rachel: No, it's fine here.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Say what the speaker is doing. After each sentence write one of the phrases from the box.

asking for advice asking permission expressing a wish giving an order inviting	making a request making a suggestion offering food offering to help refusing permission
--	---

- Will you have a piece of cake? *offering food*
- May I sit down?
 - You must report to me every day.
 - What jobs should I apply for?
 - Would you like to spend the day with us?
 - Shall I do the washing-up?
 - Shall we sit outside?
 - I'm sorry. You can't park here.
 - Could you fill in this form, please?
 - We really must have a nice big party.

📖 - Exercise 5:

Here is some information for visitors to New York City.

Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Before you travel to the US, you (►) *must* find out what documents you need. British people do not (1)..... to get a visa, but there are different rules for different nationalities. For example, you (2)..... need to show that you have enough money with you. But there's one rule you can be sure about: everyone (3)..... to show their passport. The roads in New York are very busy, but don't worry - you (4)..... get around cheaply and easily by subway. Remember that you are not (5)..... to smoke on public transport or in shops. And don't forget either that you are (6)..... to tip taxi drivers and waiters. New York is not the most dangerous city in the US, but you really (7)..... walk along empty streets at night. And it is safer if you are (8)..... to travel around in a group.

BÀI 42:

PASSIVE SENTENCE

(Câu bị động)

- Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and say what is happening. Use these subjects: *the car, dinner, a flag, some houses, the seals*. Use these verbs: *build, feed, raise, repair, serve*.



► *The car is being repaired.*

- 1
- 2
3.
4.

- Exercise 2:

Complete the information about Barford Hall. Put in the correct form of these verbs.

► build (past simple)	4. not look (past perfect)
1. own (present simple)	5. do (present perfect)
2. use (past continuous)	6. use (present simple)
3. buy (past simple)	

The building at the end of the High Street is Barford Hall, which (►) *was built* in 1827. Today the Hall (1)..... by Bardale Council. It (2)..... as a warehouse when it (3)..... by the Council in 1952, and it (4)..... after very well.

Since then a lot of work (5)..... on it, and these days the Hall
(6)..... as an arts centre.

- Exercise 3:

A press conference is being held. Out in the correct form of the verbs.

► Reporter: Can this new drug prolong human life?

Professor: Yes, we believe that human life *can be prolonged* by the drug.

1. Reporter: Are you going to do any more tests on the drug?

Professor: Yes, further tests.....soon.

2. Reporter: What..... the drug.....?

Professor: It will be called Bio-Meg.

3. Reporter: Can people buy the drug now?

Professor: No, it..... by the public yet.

4. Reporter: Do you think the company should sell this drug?

Professor: Yes, I think Bio-Meg.....to anyone who wants it.

- Exercise 4:

Put in *get* or *got* and the passive participle of these verbs: *break, change, divorce, hurt, lose*

► If we're going out to the theatre, I'd better *get changed*.

1. Daniel..... when he tried to break up a fight.

2. I know the way. We won't.....

3. You'd better wrap up the glasses, so they don't.....

4. They were only married a year before they.....

- Exercise 5:

Choose the correct verb forms in this news report about a storm.

Millions of pounds' worth of damage (►) has caused/has been caused by a storm which (1) swept/was swept across the north of England last night. The River Ribble (2) burst/was burst its banks after heavy rain. Many people (3) rescued/were rescued from the floods by fire-fighters, who (4) received/were received hundreds of calls for help. Wind speeds (5) reached/were reached ninety miles an hour in some places. Roads (6) blocked/were blocked by fallen trees, and electricity lines (7) brought/were brought down, leaving thousands of homes without

electricity. "Everything possible (8) is doing/is being done to get things back to normal," a spokesman (9) said/was said.

- Exercise 6:

In each of these sentences underline who or what is doing the action (the agent).

► The traffic was all heading out of town.

1. The photo was taken by my brother.
2. The water was pouring out of the hole.
3. A policeman has been murdered by terrorists.
4. We were woken by the alarm.
5. The guide led a group of tourists around the castle.
6. The dog has bitten several people.

- Exercise 7:

You are telling a friend some news. Use the notes and complete the second sentence. Sometimes you need to use the active and sometimes the passive.

► (Past simple: Claire / go / to Florida / last month)

You remember Claire? She *went to Florida last month*.

► (Present perfect: send / our luggage / to Australia)

Bad news about our luggage. It's *been sent to Australia*.

1. (Past simple: Claude Jennings / win / the quiz competition)

Did you hear about the quiz competition? It.....

2. (Past simple: Mrs. Miles / do / a parachute jump / last week)

You know Mrs. Miles? She

3. (Present perfect: a bull/ attack/ Mark)

Have you heard about Mark? He's.....

4. (Present continuous: build / the house)

Trevor and Laura have bought a house. It's still.....

5. (Present simple: Andrew / like / Jessica)

Did I tell you about Andrew? He.....

6. (Present perfect: throw away / your stamp collection)

Bad news about your stamp collection. It's.....

7. (Present perfect: Martians / kidnap / my neighbours)

Did I mention my neighbours? They've

8. (Past simple: five people / see / the ghost)

Did you hear about the ghost? It.....

📖 - Exercise 8:

Laura is writing to a friend. This is part of her letter.

Someone broke into our house at the weekend. The burglar took some jewellery. But luckily he didn't do any damage. A very nice young police officer interviewed me. Detectives found some fingerprints, and the police computer identified the burglar. Police have arrested a man and are questioning him. But they haven't found the jewellery.

Now complete the passive sentences in this conversation. Use a phrase with *by* only if it adds information.

Laura : Our house (►) *was broken into at the weekend.*

Melanie: Oh no!

Laura : Some jewellery (1)..... But luckily no damage (2).....

Melanie: Did the police come and see you?

Laura : Yes, they did. I (3).....

Melanie: I don't suppose they know who did it.

Laura: Well, amazingly they do. Some (4)....., and the (5)..... A man (6)..... and (7).....

Melanie: Wonderful.

Laura: There's only one problem. The (8).....

📖 - Exercise 9:

Write a paragraph from the notes about the first motor car. Some sentences are active and some are passive. Use a phrase with *by* only if it adds information.

► a Belgian called Etienne Lenoir / make / the first motor car.

The first motor car was made by a Belgian called Etienne Lenoir.

1. but / Lenoir / not produce / many cars / for sale
But Lenoir.....
2. a German called Karl Benz / start / commercial production
Commercial
3. People / now/ see / Benz / as the father / of the motor car
Benz.....

- Exercise 10:

Reply to what people say. Use the subject in brackets.

- Daniel: The bus fares have been increased. (they)
Vicky: What? You mean *they've increased the bus fares* again!
1. Melanie: Bicycles should be used for short journeys. (people)
David: Yes, I agree.....
 2. Emma: A new source of energy has been discovered. (someone)
Daniel: What? Did you say that.....
 3. Rachel: This building is going to be knocked down. (they)
Vicky: Well, no one told me that.....
 4. David: Eggs shouldn't be kept in a freezer. (you)
Tom: Really? I didn't know.....
 5. Vicky: Why isn't litter put in the bin? (people)
Emma: Exactly. Why don't.....

BAI 43:

IT IS SAID THAT.../ HE IS SAID TO...

 - Exercise 1:

Zedco managers are writing a report saying how well the company looks after its employees. Write sentences from the notes. Put the important underlined information at the end of the sentence.

- useful work skills / they are taught to our staff

Our staff are taught useful work skills.

- people with initiative / they are given opportunities

Opportunities are given to people with initiative.

1. special training / it is given to new employees

.....

2. staff who perform well / they are given extra payments

.....

3. company shares / they are offered to most employees

.....

4. six weeks' holiday / this is allowed to all Zedco staff

.....

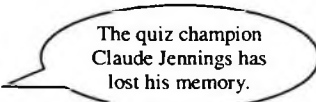
5. women who leave to have children / they are paid a full salary

.....

 - Exercise 2

Report these rumours. Instead of the active (e.g. *People say...*) use the passive (e.g. *It is said that...*).

- People say this



The quiz champion
Claude Jennings has
lost his memory.

It is said that the quiz champion Claude Jennings has lost his memory.

1. Everyone expects this.

The soap opera
"Round the Corner"
will end next year.

It is

2. Journalists suppose so.

The footballer Wayne
Johnson is earning 10
million a year.

.....

3. Lots of people believe this.

The Prime Minister
and his wife have
separated.

.....

 - Exercise 3:

Now report the rumours in Exercise 2. like this.

► *The quiz champion Claude Jennings is said to have lost his memory*

1. The soap opera (Round the Corner'
2.
3.

BÀI 44:

HAVE SOMETHING DONE (Nhờ ai làm việc gì)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and say what people are doing or what they did.
Use these phrases: *her photo, his windows, his car, her eyes, his hair*
Use these verbs: *clean, cut, repair, take, test*



► At the moment Peter *is having his hair cut*.

1. Last week John
2. At the moment Mary
3. Yesterday Daniel
4. At the moment Vicky

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read about each situation and write sentences with *have something done*.

► Jane is paying the man who has repaired her bicycle.

Jane has had her bicycle repaired.

1. David went to the hospital. A nurse bandaged his arm.
.....
2. Daniel is going to the dentist. She's going to fill his tooth.
.....
3. Laura is walking around town while her photos are being developed.
.....

📖 - Exercise 3:

Look again at Exercise 2. The jobs are all done now. Complete the questions using *get*.

► Mike: Where *did you get your bicycle repaired*, Melanie?

1. Harriet: Why
2. Emma: Where
3. Sarah: Where

📖 - Exercise 4:

Say what happened to these people.

► Claire (whose luggage was searched in customs)

Claire had her luggage searched in customs.

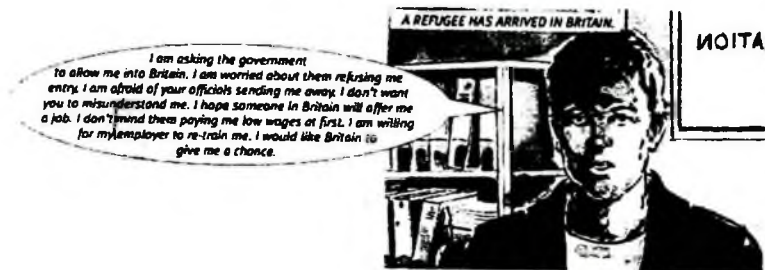
1. Tom (whose car was stolen from outside his house)
.....
2. Rita (whose rent was increased by ten per cent)
.....
3. David (whose electricity has been cut off)
.....

BAI 45:

TO BE DONE and BEING DONE

(To be done và being done)

📖 - Exercise 1:



Report what the man says. Use *the passive to-infinitive* or *ing-form*.

- ▶ He's asking to be allowed into Britain.
- ▶ He's worried about being refused entry.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

📖 - Exercise 2:

TV reporter Kitty Beamish is interviewing some workers who are protesting about not being paid enough. Complete the workers' statements. Put in an *active* or *passive to-infinitive* or *ing-form*.

- ▶ We want to be paid (pay) better wages.

1. We don't enjoy..... (use) as cheap labour.
2. We're tired of..... (work) for low wages.
3. We expect..... (treat) like human beings.
4. We don't want..... (give) up all our rights.
5. We hope..... (invite) to a meeting with the management.
6. We insist on..... (take) seriously.

- Exercise 3:

Put in an active or passive to-infinitive or ing-form.

Jessica: Are you going to be busy today?

Andrew: Well, I've got a few things (►) *to do* (do). I've got an essay (1) (write). And this room ought (2) (tidy) up a bit. This carpet needs (3) (hoover).

Jessica: I've got some jobs (4) (do), too. Most of my clothes need (5) (iron). And I've got my project (6) (finish) off. I'm worried about (7) (miss) the deadline. It has (8) (hand) in tomorrow. I don't want (9) (be) late with it.

Andrew: I don't remember (10) (tell) when the project was due in.

Jessica: Why? Haven't you done it yet?

Andrew: Oh, yes. I handed it in ages ago.

TEST 10

📖 - Exercise 1:

Rewrite these sentences beginning with the underlined words.

► Thieves robbed a woman.

A woman was robbed.

1. They may ban the film.

.....

2. They offered Alice a pay increase.

.....

3. We need to correct the mistakes.

.....

4. Someone reported that the situation was under control.

.....

5. They are testing the new drug.

.....

6. We haven't used the machine for ages.

.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

During periods of terrorist activity by the IRA, people in Britain are always (►) *being* warned to look out for bombs. Any bag or parcel without an owner (1)..... seen as a risk to the public. Some time ago a cardboard box was found at the entrance to Bristol Zoo one day. It was noticed (2)..... a visitor and reported to the director. Clearly, if it was a bomb and it went off, people might (3)..... killed. So army bomb experts (4)..... called in, and the box was safely blown up in a controlled explosion. Soon afterwards (5)..... was reported that the box had (6)..... left there by a boy wanting to find a new home for his pet rat. He was tired of the rat, he explained, but he was unwilling to (7)..... it put to sleep

by a vet, so he left it in a box outside the zoo. The director of the zoo is thought (8)..... be unenthusiastic about looking after people's unwanted pets. No one knows what the rat thought about (9)..... blown up.

- Exercise 3:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- We have to test these products. (be)

These products have to be tested.

1. Fiona sang the song. (by)

.....

2. Nancy's passport was stolen. (had)

.....

3. They pay doctors a lot of money. (are)

.....

4. I hope they'll interview me for the job. (to)

.....

5. Someone was cleaning the floor. (being)

.....

6. A mechanic is repairing Bob's car. (having)

.....

7. Sarah lost her way. (got)

.....

8. Everyone agreed that the plan should go ahead. (it)

.....

9. When did they decorate your kitchen? (get)

.....

10. They say exercise is good for you. (be)

.....

- Exercise 4:

Which of the two sentences follows on best?

- There's going to be a big art exhibition.

a) ☐ A lot of visitors will be attracted to it.

b) ☒ It will attract a lot of visitors.

1. Our neighbours have got a cat and a dog.
 - a) ☐ A lot of mice are caught by the cat.
 - b) ☐ The cat catches a lot of mice.
2. Last night Thomas dreamt he saw his dead grandmother.
 - a) ☐ A white dress was being worn by the ghost.
 - b) ☐ The ghost was wearing a white dress.
3. They've bought a new computer.
 - a) ☐ It can do the job much more quickly.
 - b) ☐ The job can be done much more quickly.
4. Your grandfather is very ill.
 - a) ☐ He's being looked after in the local hospital.
 - b) ☐ The local hospital is looking after him.
5. We've completed the experiment.
 - a) ☐ The newspapers will publish the results.
 - b) ☐ The results will be published in the newspapers.

- Exercise 5:

Each of these sentences is incorrect. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~Those nice glasses got break.~~

Those nice glasses got broken.

1. ~~The story was written Agatha Christie.~~

2. ~~Baseball do play at this stadium.~~

3. ~~This shirt needs iron.~~

4. ~~I got cut my hair yesterday.~~

5. ~~It believes that there is going to be a war.~~

6. ~~My parents divorce themselves last year.~~

7. ~~I've got a report to be written.~~

8. ~~To the winner was given a prize.~~

9. ~~This man on TV supposes to be the tallest person in the world.~~

BÀI 46:

VERB + TO-INFINITIVE
(Động từ nguyên thể có to)
📖 - Exercise 1:

Say what each speaker did. Use these verbs before a *to-infinitive*:
decide, demand, offer, promise, threaten

► Tony: I really must speak to the manager.

Tony demanded to speak to the manager.

1. Anthony: I'll put the shelves up soon, I promise.

.....

2. Alice: OK, I'll buy both the dresses.

.....

3. Susan: I'll cook the meal if you like.

.....

4. Thomas: If you don't control that dog, Jim, I'll shoot it.

.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the answers using *seem* and a *to-infinitive*. (Some of the *to-infinitives* may be *continuous* or *perfect*.)

► Carol: Have Matthew and Emma got over their quarrel?

John: I think so. *They seem to have got over it.*

► Simon: Is Claire in love with Henry?

Jane: Probably not. *She doesn't seem to be in love with him.*

1. Trevor: Do Mike and Harriet really believe there's life on Mars?

Andrew: Well, yes, there is.

2. Henry: Has Cindy's English improved?

Bob: Yes, quite a lot.

3. Howard: Does Rita like football?

Kevin: I don't think so, it much.

4. Daisy: Is Daniel working hard, do you think?

Laura: Yes, I think so, hard.

5. Vanessa: Has Trevor made a good job of those shelves?

Julia: Not really. a very good job of them.

 - Exercise 3:

Put in the *to-infinitive* form. (Some may be *continuous* or *perfect*.) Use these verbs: *come, find, hang, have, invite, leave, take*

Liza: Hello, Simon. You managed (►) *to find* your way then?

Simon: Yes, in the end. It's a bit complicated, isn't it?

Liza: Well you're here now. Do you want (1) your coat up?

Simon: Thank you.

Liza: I'm glad you decided (2) to our party. Everyone seems (3) a good time. We tend (4) lots of people to our parties.

Simon: Is Tom here?

Liza: No, he couldn't come. He'd already made an arrangement (5) somebody somewhere in his taxi.

Simon: And Rita?

Liza: Er, she was here, but she appears (6) early. I don't know where she's gone. She was with someone.

BÀI 47:

VERB + ING-FORM
(Động từ đuôi -ing)
📖 - Exercise 1:

Answer the questions using the notes in brackets.

► Mike: Is your car working now? (they / not / finish / repair / it)

You: No, *they haven't finished repairing it yet.*

1. Maria: Have you done the crossword? (I / give up / try)

You: No,

2. Arthur: There's a story here in the paper about a 130-year-old man. (I / can / not / imagine / be)

You: Good Lord. so old.

3. Peter: Do you like football? (I / enjoy / watch / it / on TV)

You: Well,

4. Janet: Whose idea was it to invite all these people? (suggest / have / a party)

You: I'm not sure. Someone.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Use three words from the table to complete each sentence.

1	2	3
can't	face	doing
couldn't	help	feeling
	resist	having
	stand	lying
		noticing

► Carol said she was OK, but I *couldn't help noticing* how upset she looked.

1. I hate holidays by the sea. I on a beach all day.

2. I feel really full. I'm afraid I a pudding with my lunch.

3. I was so tired yesterday I just any housework.
 4. Brian's car was stolen, but, as he left it unlocked, I.....
 it's his own fault.

 - Exercise 3:

Some friends have had a meal together in a restaurant. Put in the *ing-forms*. Use these verbs: *change, discuss, eat, get, miss, ring, try, wait, walk*

Laura : Shall we go then?

Alice : Daniel hasn't finished (►) *eating* yet.

Daniel : It's OK. It's just a piece of chocolate.

Paul : Chocolate? After that enormous meal?

Daniel : I know. I've eaten too much. When I find something new on the menu, I just can't resist (1)..... it.

Alice : How are we getting home?

Laura : I don't mind (2)..... I feel like some fresh air.

Alice : You're crazy. It's miles. And we've just eaten.

Paul : I suggest (3) for a taxi. It'll save (4)
around for a bus.

Susan: Good idea. I couldn't face (5) cold again after being in the warm all evening.

Alice: Yes, the bus journey is too complicated. It involves (6)..... buses in the centre. We don't want to risk (7)
 a bus and having to wait half an hour.

Daniel: Or we could take a taxi to the bus station and then get a bus from there.

Paul: Well, you can carry on (8) the problem, but I'm going to ring for a taxi.

BÀI 48:

VERB + TO-INFINITIVE or VERB + ING-FORM? (1)

(Động từ nguyên thể có *to* và động từ đuôi *-ing*) - Exercise 1:**Complete the conversation. Put in a *to-infinitive* or *ing-form*.**

Bob: Are we going to have a holiday this year?

Lucy: Didn't we all decide (►) *to spend* (spend) our holidays on a Greek island?Bob: Lovely. I enjoy (►) *lying* (lie) on the beach. I might **manage** (1) (get) a suntan.

Thomas: I'd love a holiday. I can't wait (2) (leave) this place behind.

Mary: I don't fancy (3) (stay) in one place all the time. I really dislike (4) (sit) on the beach all day.

Lucy: Well, I don't mind (5) (tour) around somewhere.

Mary: Bob, you promised (6) (go) to Scotland with me. We were planning (7) (hire) a car.

Matthew: Scotland? Are you sure? But I couldn't face (8) (drive) all the time.

Jane: I'm afraid I can't afford (9) (spend) too much money.

Jim: And I can't justify (10) (take) all that time off from my studies.

 - Exercise 2:**Complete this article from a magazine. Put in the *to-infinitive* or *ing-form* of these verbs: *accept, argue, be, find, have, insist, lose, plug, repair, say, take, wait***

If you buy something from a shop, a new stereo for example, you usually can't wait (►) *to plug* it in and put some music on. And of course, you expect (►) *to find* the equipment in working order. But that doesn't always happen, unfortunately. If the thing doesn't work, you should take it straight back to the shop. If you delay (1) it back, you will

risk (2) your rights as a customer. And you should prepare (3)..... on those rights. You may be one of those people who always avoid (4)..... with people, but in this case you should be ready for an argument. The assistant may prove (5) a true friend of the customer - it's not impossible - but first he or she will probably offer (6). the stereo for you. That's all right if you don't mind (7) a few weeks, but it isn't usually a good idea. What you should do is politely demand (8) your money back immediately. You may want to accept another stereo in place of the old one, but you don't have to. You should refuse (9)..... a credit note. Just keep on (10) that you want your money back.

- Exercise 3:

What might you say in these situations? Write a sentence with both a *to-infinitive* and an *ing-form*.

► Your decision to change your holiday arrangements might upset Lucy. You won't risk that. You don't want to. What do you say to Rachel?

I don't want to risk upsetting Lucy.

1. You and Janet want to complain about your meal in a restaurant. You need to see the manager. Janet won't ask, but you don't mind. What do you say to her?
.....
2. John doesn't like the idea of going to Scotland. But he promised. He admitted it. What do you tell Liza?
.....
3. The band were playing. They finished just as you arrived. This was quite by chance. What do you tell your friends?
Just as I arrived,.....

BÀI 49:

VERB + TO-INFINITIVE or VERB + ING-FORM? (2)

(Động từ nguyên thể có *to* và động từ đuôi *-ing*)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write in the words. Begin *I like...* or *I'd like...*Use these verbs: *buy, chase, drive, play, see*Use these objects: computer games, rabbits, the manager, this car, this tin▶ *I like playing computer games.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

▶ Arnold: I've always wanted to visit San Francisco.

Carol: Me too. *I'd love to visit* (I'd love) it some time.

1. Daisy: Tom seems to enjoy watching football matches.

Jim: Yes, (he loves) United play.

2. Simon: I'm glad I don't work as late as Sarah does.

Cindy: Me too. (I wouldn't like) such long hours.

3. Bob: I think I'll go and see this new film.

Susan: Can I go with you? (I'd like) it, too.

4. Jane: Do you want to come with me or wait here?
Julia:..... (I'd prefer) with you if that's OK.
5. Maria: I think queuing is my least favourite activity.
Thomas: I agree..(I hate).
6. Karen: Does Mark cook for you?
Nancy: No, not often. (he doesn't like).
7. Reporter: Have you ever flown in a hot-air balloon?
Mrs. Miles: No, but (he doesn't like).
8. Pauline: Did you say you're having your teeth looked at today?
Lucy: Yes, (I like) them checked once a year.

- Exercise 3:

Complete this news report about a stolen taxi. Put in the *to-infinitive* or the *ing-form* of these verbs: *drive*, *go*, *lock*, *make*, *search*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Richard Paisley, 28, has lost his taxi. It was stolen on Friday afternoon. "I just went into the news agent's for a moment," said Kevin. "I didn't bother (►) *to lock* the car." Kevin started (1) his own taxi only six months ago. "I was just beginning (2) a profit," he said. "I intend (3) on with my work as soon as I get my taxi back." The police are continuing (4) for the stolen car.

BÀI 50:

VERB + TO-INFINITIVE or VERB + ING-FORM? (3)

(Động từ nguyên thể có *to* và động từ đuôi *-ing*)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in the *to*-infinitive or the *ing*-form of the verbs.

Liza: Did you remember (►) *to pick* (pick) up those photos today?

Henry: What photos?

Liza: Oh, no. I can remember (1) (mention) it to you only this morning

Henry: I can't remember (2) (agree) to pick up some photos.

Liza: Well, don't forget (3) (call) at the shop for them tomorrow. You've got a terrible memory. Yesterday you forgot (4) (lock) the door.

Henry: I'm sure I didn't forget (5) (lock) it. I can clearly remember (6) (look) for my keys. They were in my pocket.

Liza: You ought to write notes to yourself to remind you.

Henry: That wouldn't be any good. I'd never remember (7) (look) at them!

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in the *to*-infinitive or the *ing*-form of the verbs.

I used to like going to our local cinema. It was old and rather uncomfortable, but it had character. Now they've stopped (►) *showing* (show) films there. The owner would like to go on (1) (run) the cinema, but he would need (2) (make) a lot of improvements, which would mean (3) (spend) tens of thousands of pounds. I remember (4) (watch) the last film at the cinema. It was a murder mystery. It was five minutes from the end, and we were trying (5) (work) out who the murderer was when suddenly all the lights went out and the film stopped. We sat in the dark for a few minutes, and then the owner appeared with a torch. 'I regret (6) (tell) you: he said, 'that our electricity has failed

I don't mean (7) (disappoint) you, but I'm afraid we can't show you the end of the film. We've tried (8) (phone) the electricity company, but they say they can't help.' He went on (9) (explain) to the audience how the film ended. I didn't understand the story. But I don't regret (10)..... (go) to the cinema on that last evening.

- Exercise 3:

Write each pair of sentences as one. Use a *to-infinitive* or an *ing-form*.

- Kevin: didn't ring Laura. He forgot.

Kevin forgot to ring Laura.

- Dick and Henry had been playing cards for hours. But they went on with the game.

Dick and Henry went on playing cards.

1. Nancy didn't think she could move the piano. She didn't even try.

.....

2. John once saw a spaceship. He'll never forget it.

.....

3. What about rainting the walls? They need it.

.....

4. Christina was unkind to Jane. But she didn't mean it.

.....

5. Justin was studying. He went on through the night.

.....

6. When Mike was driving, he needed to make a phone call. So he stopped.

.....

TEST 11

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversations. Put in a *to-infinitive* or an *ing-form*

- ▶ A: I hear you sometimes sail to France in your boat.
B: That's right. I really enjoy *sailing*.
- 1. A: Are you going to organize our trip?
B: Yes, of course. I've agreed.....it.
- 2. A: You wear a uniform at work, don't you?
B: Yes, I have to, although I dislikeit.
- 3. A: Do you think they'll approve the plan?
B: Yes, I'm quite sure they'll decideit.
- 4. A: What time will you be back?
B: Oh, I expect back some time around nine.
- 5. A: Did I remind you about the dinner tonight?
B: Yes, thank you. You keepme.
- 6. A: Was your decision the right one, do you think?
B: Yes, luckily. In the end it provedthe best thing for everyone.
- 7. A: Do you still work at the post office?
B: No, I gave up there last year.
- 8. A: Have ICM bought the company?
B: Well, they've offered it.
- 9. A: I'm sorry you had to wait all that time.
B: Oh, it's all right. I didn't mind..

📖 - Exercise 2:

Make sentences from the notes.

▶ John / want / buy / a new coat / soon

John wants to buy a new coat soon.

1. we / must / avoid / waste / so much time

.....

2. sometimes / a country / refuse / take part / in the Olympics
.....

3. I / like / see / the Rocky Mountains / some day
.....

4. I / mean / give / Judy / a nice welcome / yesterday
.....

5. I / always / like / see / my doctor / once a year
.....

6. the buses / usually / stop / run / before midnight
.....

7. I / can't face / get up / at five / tomorrow
.....

8. last year / we / make / an agreement / work / together
.....

9. yesterday / you / promise / carry on / shoot / the film
.....

10. my father / seem / get / better / now
.....

- Exercise 3:

Read the conversation and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Laura: I hear you're preparing to (►) *leave* for Australia.

Maria: That's right. And I'm really looking forward to it. I can't (1)..... to get there. I'm hoping (2) see all my friends while I'm there. I'm going to enjoy (3) them again after so long.

Laura: Martin and I (4) like to go away, but we can't manage it this year.

Maria: There's just one problem that I (5)..... to sort out. My tickets haven't arrived. I've tried to ring the travel agency, but I can't get through. I'm beginning to regret (6) going there myself to pick them up.

Laura: I expect they'll be here tomorrow.

Maria: That's really leaving it to the last minute. It's such a worry.

Laura: Well, I know you. You can't (7) worrying, can you?

Maria: No, I can't. I hope this holiday isn't going to turn out (..... be a disaster.

Laura: Of course it isn't. Just keep (9) trying to get through!

- Exercise 4:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► The man kept ask us for money.

The man kept asking us for money.

1. ~~We've finished to decorate the flat.~~

.....

2. ~~I regret say what I did.~~

.....

3. ~~Edward decided go not to work.~~

.....

4. ~~Do you mind help me?~~

.....

5. ~~I'm beginning getting worried.~~

.....

6. ~~I can't afford buy a new car.~~

.....

7. ~~I hope to avoid to make things worse.~~

.....

8. ~~Simon seems gone away already.~~

.....

- Exercise 5:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

► I wish I hadn't sold my bike. (regret)

I regret selling my bike.

1. The children were eager to see their presents. (wait)

.....

2. I hate to get up in the dark. (stand)

.....

3. By chance I saw your brother yesterday. (happened)

.....

The shop usually opens ten minutes late. (tends)

.....

Would you like to go for a walk? (fancy)

.....

The police continued to watch the house. (carried)

.....

Seeing Nelson Mandela will always stay in my memory. (forget)

.....

BÀI 51:

**VERB + OBJECT + TO-INFINITIVE
or ING-FORM**
(Động từ + tân ngữ + to....)
📖 - Exercise 1:
Report what people said. Use the verbs in brackets.
► Police to motorists: Take special care. (warn)
The police warned motorists to take special care.

 1. Guy to Susan: Would you like to come on my chat show? (invite)

.....

 2. Cindy to Martin: Don't forget to get the theatre tickets. (remind)

.....

 3. Dentist to Tony: You should give up eating sweets. (tell)

.....

 4. Police to gunman: Come out with your hands up. (order)

.....

📖 - Exercise 2:
Complete the sentences using *would like* or *don't/doesn't want*.
► Arthur won't wear a tie. Karen is annoyed.
She would like him to wear a tie because they're going to a concert.

1. Mrs. Miles is going to do a parachute jump, but her son and daughter don't like the idea.

They.....because they think it's dangerous.

2. Albert is falling in love with Cindy, but she's worried about this.

She.. she doesn't find him attractive.

3. Julia may not go on holiday with her friends.

They because she's always good fun to be with.

📖 - Exercise 3:
Liza Beamish is reporting what people have said to her. She combines the two sentences into one.
► "The lorry skidded. The icy road caused it."
The icy road caused the lorry to skid.

• “The workers might go on strike. The company can't risk that.”
The company can't risk the workers going on strike.

.....
 “The suspects might leave the country. The police must stop that.”

.....
 “Congress opposed him. The President didn't expect that.”

.....
 “The hostages lay down. The terrorists forced them.”

.....
 “The pound is falling in value. The government doesn't mind that.”

□ - Exercise 4:

Complete this paragraph from a guidebook to London. Use the *to-infinitive* or the *ing-form*.

We wouldn't recommend (►) *driving* (drive) into London in the rush hour. We'd advise you (1)..... (travel) by train. We'd recommend (2)..... (buy) a special saver ticket, which is cheaper than the full fare. But the railway companies don't allow you (3) (use) saver tickets before ten o'clock. This is to encourage people (4) (take) a later train, which will be less busy.

BÀI 52:

QUESTION WORD + TO-INFINITIVE

(Từ để hỏi + nguyên thể có to)

Exercise 1:

Comment on these situations.



► How do I switch the computer on?



1 What should I say?



2 Where shall we go?



3 How do I stop?

► (not know) *He doesn't know how to switch the computer on.*

1. (can't think)
2. (not sure).....
3. (not know).....

Exercise 2:

Look at the questions and then complete the paragraph about a man coming out of prison. Use a question word and a *to-infinitive*.

- How should he start a new life?
1. What can he expect?
 2. Where should he go?
 3. How can he find somewhere to live?
 4. What should he do?
 5. Who can he contact?

This man will have problems when he leaves prison. He needs advice on (►) *how to start* a new life. After a long time in prison, he isn't sure (1) in the outside world and he has no idea (2)

..... He doesn't know (3) a place to live either.
 But he won't be completely alone. A social worker will advise him (4)
, so he'll know (5) if he needs help.

- Exercise 3:

You are finding it very difficult to make your mind up.

Complete your answers to the questions. Use a question word and a to-infinitive.

► Rachel: Are you going to buy that sweater?

You: I don't know *whether to buy* it or not.

► Tom: What time do you think we should leave?

You: I'm not really sure *what time to leave*.

1. Daniel: Do you want to do business studies?

You: I'm wondering business studies or statistics.

2. Vicky: How much money should we spend on the present?

You: I've no idea on it.

3. Matthew: Do you intend to join the sports club?

You: I can't decide it or not.

4. Rachel: Which route should we take?

You: It's difficult to know

5. Mary: Which lottery numbers are you going to choose?

You: I haven't decided

BÀI 53:

ADJECTIVE + TO-INFINITIVE

(Tính từ + động từ nguyên thể có to)

- Exercise 1:

Sarah's job is to write advertisements. She is writing one for Comper computers. Write sentences with it and an adjective followed by a *to-infinitive*.

► Buy a Comper computer. It isn't expensive.

It isn't *expensive to buy a Comper computer*.

1. Using the computer is very simple.

It's very

2. Understanding the handbook isn't difficult.

It isn't

3. You can run any kind of software. It's easy.

.....

4. Exploring the world of Comper is absolutely fascinating.

.....

5. Try the ultimate computer experience. Are you ready?

.....

- Exercise 2:

Sarah isn't happy with her ideas for the Comper advertisement. She is rewriting the first four sentences like this.

~ A Comper computer *isn't expensive to buy*.

1. The computer

2. The handbook

3

4

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Make sentences from the notes in brackets.

Nick: Are you going to Mike and Harriet's party?

Tom: Yes, I am. (►) *It's sure to be a good party* (it / sure / be / a good party).

Nick: Will there be a lot of people there?

Tom: Yes, (1) (it / likely / be / pretty crowded).

Nick: Has Rita been invited, do you know?

Tom: Oh, (2) (she / certain / be / there).

Nick: I don't know that part of town. Is the house easy to find?

Tom: No, it isn't. Take a map or (3) (you / unlikely / find / it).

- Exercise 4:

Laura and Rachel are talking about two students they know called Gary and Steve. Complete the conversation. Put in *for* or *of*.

Laura: I can't believe that Gary and Steve had a fight in a pub. Don't you think that was very foolish (►) *of* them?

Rachel: Yes, it was especially stupid (1) them to quarrel about which football team is the best. There must be something more interesting (2) them to talk about.

Laura: I blame Steve. It wasn't very sensible (3) him to knock Gary's drink over.

Rachel: It was brave (4) Daniel to try to stop the fight. It was awful (5) him to get hit on the head with a chair.

BÀI 54:

FOR WITH THE TO-INFINITIVE
(For với dạng nguyên thể có to) - Exercise 1:

The second person agrees with what the first one says. Use *for* and a *to-infinitive*.

► Daniel: Andrew should take it easy. That would be best.

Matthew: Yes, you're right. It would be best for him to take it easy.

1. Trevor: Our new computer should arrive soon. I just can't wait.

Laura: Me neither. I

2. Rachel: Matthew shouldn't marry Emma. It would be a mistake.

Vicky: I think so too.

3. Customer: Advertisements should tell the truth. It's important.

Mark: I agree.

 - Exercise 2:

Write the advertisement for a holiday centre. Match the sentence pairs and write sentences with *for* and a *to-infinitive*.

There are lots of activities. There's a fun pool. There are quite areas. There are regular shows. There's a giant roller-coaster.	You can enjoy them. You can relax in them. <u>Guests can take part in them.</u> You can ride on it if you dare. Children can swim in it.
---	--

► *There are lots of activities for guests to take part in.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

 - Exercise 3:

Add a sentence with *too* or *enough* and: *difficult*, *funny*, *heavy*, *high*, *hot*, *loud*

- Mike and Harriet couldn't lift the piano. *It was too heavy for them to lift.*
- Tom won't repeat the joke. *It isn't funny enough for him to repeat.*
1. Emma can't reach the top shelf.
 2. We can't understand the poem.
 3. Not everyone could hear the music.
 4. The tea had got cold. Daniel couldn't drink it.

- Exercise 4:

A Japanese company called Sanko is going to open a new factory in a town in England. Write the sentences from the local newspaper.

- marvellous / the town / have / some new jobs
It will *be marvellous for the town to have some new jobs.*
- clever / our local council/bring / Sanko / here
It was *clever of our local council to bring Sanko here.*
1. difficult / the town / attract / new industry
It has been
 2. very generous / the council/give / the land / to Sanko
It was.....
 3. the company / eager / production / begin / soon
The company

BÀI 55:**THE INFINITIVE WITH AND WITHOUT TO**
(Động từ nguyên thể có to và không có to) **- Exercise 1:**

Comment on these situations. Join each pair of sentences using a *to-infinitive*.

- Mike will give you a lift. He promised.

You: Mike *promised to give me a lift*.

1. You want to eat. You must have something.

You: I must

2. You are having a rest. It's nice.

You: It's

3. Will Jane speak to Nick? He wants her to.

Nick

4. Daniel can't repair the video. He doesn't know how to.

.....

5. Claire and her sister are going to Bali. They have decided.

.....

6. Melanie is visiting David. She has gone to the hospital.

.....

7. Vicky is doing some studying. Unfortunately she has to.

.....

8. Sarah must ring the office. It's important.

.....

 - Exercise 2:

Put in the missing verbs. Usually more than one answer is correct.

- I've been repairing the car. I really must *wash* my hands.

1. What's in the letter? Why won't you let me..... it?

2. Did you see that lovely old car..... past a moment ago?

3. It was a terribly sad story. It made me.....

4. I don't want to do anything energetic. I'd rather..... on the beach.
5. It's very cold. I think it might..... for the first time this winter.
6. I keep getting this pain in my leg. I think I'd better..... a doctor.

- Exercise 3:

Matthew and Emma are at the railway station. Emma is going away for the weekend. Put in the infinitive of the verbs. You have to decide whether or not you need *to*.

Matthew: Are you sure you'll (►) *be* (be) all right?

Emma: Yes, of course. I'm not a child. I can manage (►) *to look* (look) after myself.

Matthew: OK, sorry.

Emma: Some friends have invited me (1)..... (visit) them. I'm not going to the North Pole.

Matthew: It'll be nice for you (2)..... (see) your old friends again. I just know you're going (3)..... (have) lots of fun. Let me (4)..... (buy) you a magazine (5)..... (read) on the train.

Emma: I can't (6)..... (read) when I'm travelling. It makes me (7)..... (feel) sick, even in a train. I'd rather just (8)..... (look) out of the window.

Matthew: OK. Well, you'd better (9) (get) in. I think it's about (10)..... (leave). Oh, did I remind you (11)..... (change) at York?

Emma: Yes, Matthew, you did. Don't worry, I won't (12) (forget). I know perfectly well how (13)..... (get) there.

BÀI 56:

VERB/ ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION +
ING-FORM

(Động từ/tính từ + giới từ + -ing)

 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversation between Claire and her sister Susan. Put in the verbs with these prepositions: *for, in, like, of, on*

Susan: Where's that little radio of yours?

Claire: Oh, it got broken. Henry knocked it off the table. Unfortunately he hasn't succeeded (►) *in getting* (get) it to work again.

Susan: Oh, what a pity.

Claire: It was only a cheap thing. In fact I'd been thinking (1).....
(buy) a new one. But Henry not only apologized (2).....
(break) it, he insisted (3)..... (buy) me a much nicer one. It's
in the dining-room.

Susan: Henry is such a gentleman.

Claire: He didn't really need to buy me a new one, but I didn't feel
(4)..... (argue).

 - Exercise 2:

Comment on these situations. Join each pair of sentences using a preposition and an *ing-form*.

► The police prevented the crime. It didn't take place.

The police prevented the crime from taking place.

1. Laura blamed Trevor. He forgot the tickets.

Laura

2. The doctors succeeded. They saved the driver's life.

The doctors

3. The customers complained. They didn't receive the goods

.....

4. Emma has accused Matthew. She says Matthew broke his promise.

.....

5. Melanie is insisting. She's going to cook a meal for David.
.....
6. A new traffic scheme has stopped cars. They can't go into the town centre.
.....
7. Everyone congratulated Claude. He won the quiz competition.
.....
8. Some football fans were arrested. They attacked a policeman.
.....

 - Exercise 3:

Complete Emma's letter to her friend Kirsty. Put in a preposition and an *ing-form*.

Thank you (►) *for inviting* (invite) me to come and see you next month. I'm already excited (1)..... (see) you again. You must be very pleased (2)..... (get) the job you wanted. Congratulations. Personally, I wouldn't be keen (3)..... (travel) forty miles to work. I apologize (4)..... (not write) sooner, but a week in bed with flu has prevented me (5)..... (do) anything. I haven't even felt (6)..... (write) letters until today. I must be getting better because I'm starting to feel bored (7)..... (do) nothing. I'm thinking (8)..... (go) back to work tomorrow.

BÀI 57:

AFRAID TO DO or AFRAID OF DOING?

(Afraid to do hay afraid of doing?)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the sentences. Use these words and put the verbs into the *to-infinitive* or *ing-form*: dive into the water, drop them, fall, move



► He's afraid *to dive into the water*.

1. She's afraid
2. She's afraid
3. He's afraid

📖 - Exercise 2:

Look at what people say and write a comment about each person. Rewrite the second sentence using *afraid to* or *afraid of*.

- Vicky: There's a large bull in the field. I don't want to open the gate.
Vicky is afraid to open the gate.
- Claire: I arrived at the airport in good time. I thought I might get stuck in traffic.
Claire was afraid of getting stuck in traffic.
1. Nick: I was going to do a bungee jump yesterday. But I couldn't jump.

 2. Daniel: The policeman looked angry. I didn't want to argue with him.

3. Matthew: I'm keeping my shirt on. I might get sunburnt.

.....

Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in a *to-infinitive* or a *preposition + ing-form*.

Linda: I'm ashamed (►) *to admit* (admit) it, but aeroplanes terrify me. I get really anxious (►) *about flying* (fly). I'm afraid (1)..... (buy) a plane ticket. I can't stand being on a plane. I'm afraid (2)..... (get) killed. I feel ashamed (3)..... (be) so silly.

Susan: Aren't there things you can do to overcome your fear?

Linda: Well, I was interested (4)..... (read) in the paper recently that you can go on a course that helps you. I'm anxious (5)..... (book) a place on it very soon.

Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Use a *to-infinitive* or *about + ing-form*. Look at the information in brackets.

Alan: I'm sorry (►) *to disturb you* (I'm disturbing you), but could I just say something? I'm sorry (1)..... (I was so rude) last night. I didn't mean what I said.

Mark: Oh, that's OK. I'm sorry (2)..... (I lost my temper).

Alan: Right. OK. And, as I said, sorry (3)..... (I'm interrupting you).

BÀI 58:

USED TO DO and USED TO DOING

(Use to do và used to doing)

☐ - Exercise 1:

Mrs. Bell is a hundred years old. She's the oldest person in the village. A radio reporter is interviewing her. Put in *used to* + verb.

Mrs. Bell: I've always lived in the village, but not always in this village.

Reporter: Where (►) *did you use to live* (you / live)?

Mrs. Bell: When I was a girl, we lived at Apple Tree Farm. (1)....
(we / like) it there.

Reporter: But life was hard, wasn't it?

Mrs. Bell: Oh, yes. Things (2)..... (be) different from the way they
are now. In those days (3) (we / not / have) electricity.

Reporter: And (4)..... (you / help) with the farm work?

Mrs. Bell: Yes, (5)..... (I / look) after the hens.

☐ - Exercise 2:

Look at the pictures and say what the people *used to do* or are *doing*.

Use these verbs: *climb, fly, paint, play, sign*

Use these objects: *autographs, badminton, mountains, pictures, ...*



He used to paint pictures.

He's used to signing autographs.

She

They

He

Exercise 3:

Write in a *to-infinitive* or *to + ing-form*. Use the verbs in brackets.

When I was a child, I used to dream (dream) of being an astronaut.

I'm terribly nervous. I'm not used to speaking (speak) to a large audience.

It took us ages to get used to (live) in a block of flats.

Trains used to (stop) here, but not many do now.

Tom didn't use to (work) on a building site?

There didn't use to be (be) so many soap operas on television.

I don't have an orange juice, please. I'm not used to (drink) alcohol.

Daniel doesn't seem to mind being in hospital. I suppose he's got used to (be) there.

When Laura was at college, she used to (have) a picture of Elvis Presley on her bedroom wall.

BÀI 59:

**PREPOSITION OR LINKING WORD
+ING-FORM**
(Giới từ hoặc liên từ + giới từ đuôi ing)

 - Exercise 1:

Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

- Rachel: Do you want to walk? Vicky: Yes, let's not get a bus. (instead of)
Vicky wants to walk *instead of getting a bus*.
1. Sarah: Did you get through the work? Mark: Yes, I stayed up all night. (by)
Mark got through the work
2. Melanie: When do you take the pills? David: The minute I wake in the morning. (on)
David has to take the pills
3. Mike: So you got the answer? Harriet: Yes, and I didn't use a calculator. (without)
Harriet got the answer
4. Emma: Why the rucksack? Matthew: So I can carry the food. (for)
The rucksack
5. Trevor: Sorry I forgot the sugar. Laura: Well, you had it on your list. (in spite of)
Trevor forgot the sugar
6. Mark: Do you have to do the typing? Secretary: Yes, and book some flights. (as well as)
The secretary has to book some flights

 - Exercise 2:

This structure is often used in instructions (sentences which tell people what to do). Put in *before* or *after* and the *ing-form* of the verb in brackets.

- Replace the top on the bottle *after taking* (take) the medicine.

ead the contract through carefully..... (sign) it.
 ou shouldn't have a bath straight..... (eat) a meal.
 (leave) home ring the airport to check that your flight is
 n schedule.
 lways put your skis away carefully..... (use) them.
 e sure to switch off the electricity..... (change) a fuse.
 ake sure the safety chain is on..... (open) the door.

Exercise 3:

Mason owns a supermarket business. Write the sentences for a magazine article about his life. Join two sentences into one using the *Is* in brackets.

He saw an empty shop. He was walking around town one day. (while)
He saw an empty shop while walking around town one day.

He thought carefully. He decided to buy it. (before)

.....

He bought the shop. He had little money of his own. (despite)

.....

He became successful. He gave the customers what they wanted. (by)

.....

He put the profit back into the business. He didn't spend it on himself.
 (instead of)

.....

He was happy. He was running his own business. (when)

.....

He fell ill. He worked too hard. (as a result of)

.....

He has made a lot of money. He bought his first shop ten years ago.
 (since)

.....

BAI 60:

SEE IT HAPPEN or SEE IT HAPPENING?

(See somebody/something do và see somebody/something doing)

Exercise 1:

Henry is in court: He is answering questions about a Mr. Lewis, who he police suspect of a number of crimes. Add a sentence using the verb in brackets.

- And you say a second man came into the restaurant? (see)

Henry: That's right. *I saw him come in.*

- Are you quite certain that Mr. Lewis took the envelope? (see)

Henry: Yes, absolutely

- Then Mr. Lewis left the restaurant, did he? (watch)

Henry: He left soon afterwards

- And he drove away. (hear)

Henry: Yes, he did

Exercise 2:

Look at the pictures and add a sentence with *I can see/hear/smell...* and the *ing-form* of these verbs: *bark*, *burn*, *come*, *ring*, *wave*



► The postman is on his way. *I can see him coming.*

1. There's a phone upstairs
2. There's a woman in the boat
3. There are some dogs outside.
4. You've forgotten your lunch.

- Exercise 3:

There has been a bomb explosion in the city centre. TV reporter Kitty Beamish is asking people about it. What did people see or hear?

► Man: The bomb exploded. I heard it. It was a shock.

He heard the bomb explode.

► Woman: A man was lying in the road. I saw him. He was just lying there.

She saw a man lying in the road.

1. Woman: The building shook. I felt it. I couldn't believe it.
.....
2. Man: People were shouting. I heard them. There was panic.
.....
3. Girl: An alarm was ringing. I could hear it. It went on and on.
.....
4. Boys: The police arrived. We saw them. They were over there.
.....
5. Man: I saw a woman. She was crying. She was in a terrible state.
.....

BÀI 61:

SOME STRUCTURES WITH THE ING-FORM

(Các thành ngữ + động từ đuôi -ing)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Say what accidents these people had. Use these phrases: *lift weights, light a fire, open a tin, run, ski*. Put the verbs describing the longer action in the *-ing form*.



▶ Harriet burnt her hand lighting a fire.

1. Mark
2. Daniel
3. Rachel
4. Tom

📖 - Exercise 2:

Rewrite the sentences about a detective. Begin with an *ing-form*, e.g. *doing or having done*.

Trevor picked up the phone and dialled a number. He let it ring for five long minutes and then slowly replaced the receiver. He took a gun out of the drawer and put it in his briefcase. He left the office and then had to wait a while for the lift. He leached the ground floor and hurried outside to a taxi. The taxi driver pulled out a gun and shot Trevor.

- ▶ *Picking up the phone, Trevor dialled a number.*
- ▶ *Having let it ring for five long minutes, he slowly replaced the receiver.*

Exercise 3:

Join the two parts and join them using an *ing*-form, e.g. *doing* or *being done*.

Because she didn't want to be	Harriet turned on the heating.
As she had worked hard all	Andrew took it back to the library.
Because he had studied the	Daniel found it hard to communicate.
, he felt cold, so	<u>Vicky ran to the bus stop.</u>
Because he didn't know French,	Trevor knew which way to go.
He had finished the book, so	<u>Sarah was exhausted.</u>

Not wanting to be late, Vicky ran to the bus stop.

Having worked hard all day, Sarah was exhausted.

TEST 12

□ - Exercise 1:

Some of these sentences are correct, and be there. If the sentence is incorrect, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, write it in the space.

- ▶ I'm used to driving in heavy traffic everyday. ✓
- ▶ Although of feeling tired, Polly didn't want to go to bed. of
- It's important for to sign the form.
- Peter broke his arm in playing rugby.
- A woman accused Martin of stealing her money.
- I wasn't sure whether to write a letter of thanks.
- Do you remember a young man bumping into you?
- The girl's parents wouldn't let her to stay out so late.
- The book is too difficult enough for children to understand.
- Police found the woman for lying dead on the floor.
- Cars are always expensive to repair them.
- 0. The man died as a result of falling asleep while driving.

□ - Exercise 2:

This is an advertisement for the book

are you fed up with (▶) *being* (be) a Cam- rather (▶) *succeed* (succeed)? Do you want (▶) *to earn* (earn) more money? Are you anxious (1)..... (get) ahead? Do you believe in (2)..... (make) the most of talents? Do you sometimes dream about (3)..... (reach) the top? If the answer is yes, read on. Just imagine yourself (4)..... (run) a big successful company. And now you can do something about it instead of (5)..... (dream). It'll happen if you want it (6)..... (happen). Make it a reality by (7)..... (order) your copy of the best-selling 'Winning in business'. It has a ten-point plan for you (8)..... (follow). Do it and you're certain (9)..... (be) a success. You'll know what (10)..... (do) in business. You can make other people (11)..... (respect) you and persuade them (12)..... (do) what you want. Experts recommend (13)..... (buy) this marvellous book. You'd better (14)..... (order) your copy today.

- Exercise 3:

Combine each pair of sentences. Use a *to-infinitive* or an *ing-form*. Sometimes you also need a **preposition**.

► We've advised Nancy. She should get a lawyer.

We've advised Nancy to get a lawyer.

► I'm getting bored. I've been sitting on the beach.

I'm getting bored with sitting on the beach.

1. We saw Rupert. He was looking in a shop window.

2. I remember the clown. He fell over.

3. Tessa wasn't sure. Which way should she go?

4. The porter just stood there. He expected a tip.

5. How about it? Shall we go to the barbecue?

6. Susan is used to it. She's always lived in the country.

7. I'm afraid. I might hurt myself.

8. Christopher apologized. He'd forgotten to pay.

9. The food was too cold. Michelle couldn't eat it.

10. Polly was silly. She gave away the secret.

- Exercise 4:

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Calvin Coolidge was elected US President in 1924. He didn't believe (►) *in* doing too much, and his slogan was 'Keep cool with Coolidge'. Soon (1)..... moving into the White House, Coolidge invited some old friends (2)..... have dinner with him there. They were all people he (3)..... to know in the old days, and they were simple

country people. They were interested (4)..... inside the White House, and they were looking forward to (5)..... dinner with the President. They thought it was nice (6)..... him (7)..... invite them. But there was one problem. They weren't used (8)..... attending formal dinners, and they were worried that they wouldn't know (9)..... to behave. They were afraid (10)..... looking foolish. So they decided it would be best (11)..... everyone to copy exactly what Coolidge did.

At last the day came. During the dinner, when Coolidge picked up his knife and fork, everyone did the same. When he drank, everyone drank, and so on. Finally Coolidge decided to amuse himself (12)..... playing a little trick on his visitors. He tipped some coffee into his saucer. Everyone did the same. (13)..... done this, he added a little cream and sugar. Everyone did the same. Then, horrified, they watched Coolidge bend down and (14)..... the saucer on the carpet for his cat.

- Exercise 5:

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb.

► A: I'm annoyed about *being* (be) late.

B: Well, I told you *to set* (set) off in good time, didn't I? '

1. A: Did you accuse Nigel of..... (break) a plate?

B: Well, it was an accident, but he did break it. I saw him..... (knock) it off the table with his elbow.

2. A: I came here..... (see) Janet. She must have forgotten I was coming.

B: It seems rather careless of her..... (forget).

3. A: Are you going to have a rest now after..... (do) all the cleaning?

B: No, I've got some letters..... (write).

4. A: You say you need some advice?

B: Yes, I'm sorry..... (bother) you, but I don't know who..... (ask).

5. A: Do you like Scrabble?

B: Well, I used..... (play) it quite a lot, but I got fed up with it. I'd rather..... (watch) television, actually.

BÀI 62:

COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE
NOUNS (1)

(Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the underlined nouns. Are they are countable or uncountable?

► There was a car behind us.

► I never eat meat.

1. Do you play golf?2. I had to wait ten minutes.3. Just tell me one thing.4. Love makes the words go round.5. Good luck in your new job.6. Power stations produce energy.7. I'm taking a photo.8. Would you like an apple?

countable

uncountable

uncountable

countable

countable

uncountable

uncountable

uncountable

countable

countable

📖 - Exercise 2:

Sarah has been to the supermarket. What has she bought? Use *a* or *some* with these words: *banana*, *biscuits*, *butter*, *cheese*, *eggs*, *flowers*, *lemon*, *light bulb*, *mineral water*, *magazine*, *soap*, *wine*

► some flowers

► a magazine

4 a bottle soap

5 a banana

► some cheese

1. some ~~cheese~~ ^{bees}
 2. a ~~light~~ ^{bull}
 3. ~~the~~ ^{little} ~~win~~

6.....

7.....

8.....

9.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form.

Jessica: What are you doing, Andrew?

Andrew: I'm writing (►) essay/an essay.

Jessica: Oh, you've got (1) computer/a computer. Do you always write (2) essay/essays on your computer?

Andrew: Yes, but I'm not doing very well today. I've been working on my plan for about three (3) hour/hours now.

Jessica: You've got lots of books to help you, though. I haven't got as (4) many/much books as you. That's because I haven't got much (5) money/moneys. Quite often I can't even afford to buy (6) food/a food.

Andrew: Really? That can't be (7) many/much fun.

Jessica: I'd like to get (8) job/a job I can do in my spare time and earn (9) a/some money. I've got (10) a few/a little ideas, but what do you think I should do?

Andrew: I know someone who paints (11) picture/pictures and sells them. Why don't you do that?

Jessica: Because I'm no good at painting.

BÀI 63:**COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUN (2)**
(Danh từ đếm được và không đếm được)**📖 - Exercise 1:****What did Tom buy at the supermarket? Use of.**

Milk	0.35	▶ <i>two cartons of milk</i>
1 kilo flour	0.85	▶ <i>a kilo of flour</i>
Jam	0.95	1. <i>a jar of jam</i>
Matches	0.39	2.
Bread	0.65	3.
Bread	0.65	4.
Chocolate	0.95	5.
5 kilos potatoes	1.59	6.
Breakfast cereal	1.38	7.
Mineral water	0.74	8.
Mineral water	0.74	
Toothpaste	0.89	
Total	£10.48	

📖 - Exercise 2:**Complete the sentences. Put in *a/an* or *some*.**▶ I really ought to do *some* housework.

- The people who camped in the field have left..... rubbish.
- I've been working on the business plan. I've made..... progress.
- The visitors are here for two nights. They're looking for..... accommodation.
- That shop has nice sofa.
- You'll have to pay extra for the taxi because you've got..... luggage.
- The flat is quite empty. I need..... furniture.
- I can't possibly fit this guitar into..... suitcase.
- You need..... luck to win at this game.

□ - Exercise 3:

You are talking about the holiday you had with a friend. Use these words: accommodation, awful journey, beautiful scenery, chair, fun, good weather, meal. You have to decide whether you need to put a/an or not.

- ▶ (It was quite easy to book a place to stay.)
Booking accommodation was quite easy.
- ▶ (There was nothing to sit on in your room.)
But my room wasn't very nice. It didn't even have a chair in it.
- ▶ (You were in a beautiful part of the country.)
It was a lovely place, though. There was..... all around us.
- ▶ (The weather was good.)
And we had..... while we were there.
- ▶ (One evening you went to a restaurant with some other people.)
One evening we had..... with some people we met.
- ▶ (You enjoyed yourselves at the disco.)
We went to a disco. We had..... there.
- ▶ (Travelling home was awful.)
We had..... home last Saturday.

BÀI 64:

COUNTABLE NOUNS A/AN and SOME

(Danh từ đếm được với a/an và some)

📖 - Exercise 1:

What are these things? Try and find out if you don't know.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| ► an ant? | It's <i>an insect</i> |
| ► ants/ bees? | They are <i>insects</i> |
| 1. a cauliflower? | It's <i>a cauliflower</i> |
| 2. a pigeon? | It's |
| 3. a dandelion? | It's |
| 4. a skyscraper? | It's |
| 5. Earth? Mars? Venus? Jupiter? | They |
| 6. the Rhine? the Nile? The Mississippi? | They |

And who were these people?

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| ► Beethoven? | He was <i>a composer</i> . |
| ► Beethoven? Bach? | They were <i>composers</i> . |
| 7. Pele? | He was |
| 8. Shakespeare? | He |
| 9. Einstein? | He |
| 10. Marilyn Monroe? | She |

📖 - Exercise 2:

Now you have to read about someone's job and then write what his or her job is.

► Ron flies aeroplanes. He's a pilot.

- Vera types letters etc. in an office. She is
- Tim arranges people's holidays for them. He
- Stella looks after patients in hospital. She
- Mary teaches mathematics.
- Martin directs films

📖 - Exercise 3:

Now you have to put in *a/an* or *some* or leave a space (without a word)

► I've seen *some* good films recently. Have you got a headache?

1. Have you got..... camera?
2. Would you like to be..... actor?
3. Bill's got..... big feet.
4. Do you collect..... stamps?
5. Jim always gives Mary..... flowers on her birthday.
6. Those are.....really nice trousers. Where did you get them?
7. What..... beautiful garden!
8. What..... lovely children!
- 9..... birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.

BÀI 65:

THE POSSESSIVE FORM OF NOUN

(Dạng sở hữu của danh từ)

- Exercise 1:

Join the two (or three) nouns. Sometimes you have to use 's or s'; sometimes you have to use... of...

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| ▶ the owner / that car | <i>the owner of that car</i> |
| ▶ the mother / Ann | <i>Ann's mother</i> |
| 1. the jacket / that man | ..... |
| 2. the top / the page | ..... |
| 3. the daughter / Charles | ..... |
| 4. the cause / the problem | ..... |
| 5. the birthday / my father | ..... |
| 6. the toys / the children | ..... |
| 7. the cost / a new computer | ..... |
| 8. the garden / our neighbours | ..... |
| 9. the ground floor / the building | ..... |
| 10. the children / Don and Mary | ..... |
| 11. the economic policy / the government | ..... |
| 12. the husband / Catherine | ..... |
| 13. the husband / the woman talking to Liz | ..... |
| 14. the car / the parents / Mike | ..... |
| 15. the wedding / the friend / Amy | ..... |

- Exercise 2:

What is another way of saying these things? Use 's.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ a hat for a woman | <i>a woman's hat</i> |
| 1. a name for a boy | ..... |
| 2. clothes for children | ..... |
| 3. a school for girls | ..... |
| 4. a nest for a bird | ..... |
| 5. a magazine for women | ..... |

📖 - Exercise 3:

Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

- The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.

Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled

1. The storm last week caused a lot of damage.

Last.....

2. The only movie theater in town has closed down.

The

3. Exports from Japan to the United States have fallen recently.

.....

4. Tourism is the main industry in the region.

.....

📖 - Exercise 4:

Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses.

- I bought groceries at the supermarket last night. They will last us for a week.

I bought a week's groceries at the supermarket last night. (groceries)

1. Kim got a new car. It cost the same as her salary for a year.

Kim's new car cost her..... (salary)

2. Jim lost his job. His company gave him extra money equal to his pay for four weeks.

Jim got..... when he lost his job. (pay)

3. I haven't been able to rest all day. I haven't rested for even a minute.

I haven't had all day. (rest)

4. I went to bed at midnight and woke up at 5 a.m.

I only had..... last night. (sleep)

BÀI 66:

SINGULAR and PLURAL

(Danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều)

- Exercise 1:

Put in the nouns and add *s* if necessary.

► Claire had to take her luggage through *customs* (custom).

1. Please accept this gift as an expression of our..... (thank).
2. The woman is demanding..... (damage) for her injuries.
3. The..... (pain) was so bad I called the doctor.
4. The old man carried his few..... (belonging) in a plastic bag.
5. If we pay in cash, we make a..... (saving) of ten percent.
6. More..... (good) should be transported by rail instead of by road.
7. The gas explosion caused some..... (damage) to the flats.
8. We're going to spend all our..... (saving) on a new car.
9. The company always takes..... (pain) to protect its image.

- Exercise 2:

Look at each group of words and say what they are part of. Start your answers like this: *ath...* , *eco...* , *geo...* , *his...* , *mat...* , *phy...*

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| ► atoms, energy, heat, light | <i>physics</i> |
| 1. algebra, numbers, shapes, sums | ..... |
| 2. dates, nations, past times, wars | ..... |
| 3. the high jump, the long jump, running, throwing | ..... |
| 4. industry, money, prices, work | ..... |
| 5. the climate, the earth, mountains, rivers | ..... |

- Exercise 3:

Choose the correct verb form.

- The television news is/are at ten o'clock.
1. These clothes is/are the latest fashion.
 2. Maths is/are Emma's favourite subject.

3. The troops was/were involved in a training exercise.
4. The contents of the briefcase seems/seem to have disappeared.
5. Darts is/are often played in pubs in England.
6. The athletics we watched was/were quite exciting.
7. The remains of the meal was/were thrown in the bin.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Complete this letter Rachel has received from her sister. Choose the correct forms.

(►) Thank/Thanks for your letter. Your news (1) was/were interesting. We must talk soon. What about us? Well, we're living on the (2) outskirt/outskirts of town, not far from the company (3) headquarter/headquarters, where Jeremy works. We've spent nearly all our (4) saving/savings on the house. That wouldn't matter so much if I hadn't crashed the car last week and done some (5) damage/damages to the front of it. More bills! But at least I wasn't hurt. The house is nice actually, but the surroundings (6) isn't/aren't very pleasant. We're on a very busy (7) crossroad/crossroads. I'm doing the course I told you about. Statistics (8) is/are an easy subject, I find, but economics (9) gives/give me problems!

BÀI 67:

NOUN + NOUN
(Danh từ + danh từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Say what these things are. For each picture use two of these nouns:
alarm, camera, chair, clock, cycle, luggage, motor, office, racket, television, tennis, trolley



► *an office chair*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Can you say it a better way? Use two nouns together.

► (I read an interesting article in a newspaper yesterday.)

I read an interesting newspaper article yesterday.

1. (Have you got any shirts made of cotton?)
.....
2. (What shall I do with this bottle that had lemonade in it?)
.....
3. (Have you got a bag to carry shopping in?)
.....
4. (Is there a shop that sells shoes near here?)
.....

5. (I'd like a table in the corner, please.)
.....

6. (I'll need some boots to climb in.)
.....

7. (Do you operate computers?)
.....

- Exercise 3:

Look at the definitions and write the words.

► a station from which trains leave *a train station*

► a bottle once containing medicine and made of glass

a glass medicine bottle

1. a wall made of stone

2. a centre where information is given to tourists

3. a towel you use after having a bath

4. clothes for working in

5. a block of offices in the centre of a city

6. a graph showing sales

7. a card that gives you credit

8. a race for horses

9. the Director of Marketing

10. a tour by bicycle at the end of the week

TEST 13

📖 - Exercise 1:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| ► Would you like a piece of chocolate? | ✓ |
| ► I like a classical music very much. | a |
| 1. That's a wonderful news! | ..... |
| 2. Do you own a computer? | ..... |
| 3. I heard an interesting piece of information today . | ..... |
| 4. I saw your friend playing a golf. | ..... |
| 5. There's some luggage in the car. | ..... |
| 6. I bought a carton of some milk. | ..... |
| 7. The gates were made of an iron. | ..... |
| 8. You need an experience to run a business like this. | ..... |

📖 - Exercise 2:

Tessa is talking about her shopping trip. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

I spent (►) *some* time looking round the shops in Oxford Street yesterday. I spent far too (1)..... money, of course. I bought some (2)..... three dresses, a sweater, a blouse, two (3)..... of trousers and a skirt. I enjoyed myself - it was great (4)..... The skirt is really nice. A hundred pounds (5)..... quite expensive, but I couldn't resist it. Anyway, it was reduced from a hundred and twenty pounds, so I made a (6)..... of twenty pounds. One of the dresses (7)..... fit, I've discovered, but I can take it back next time I go. I had a wonderful time and bought all these lovely thing But it was very crowded. Everyone (8)..... rushing about. And the traffic (9)..... terrible. I usually have a coffee and a (10)..... of cake, but the cafes were all full. so I didn't bother.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

► Could I have some bread, please? (piece)

Could I have a piece of bread, please?

1. All the windows were broken. (every)
.....
2. The money I earn isn't enough to live on. (earnings)
.....
3. There were bits of paper everywhere. (litter)
.....
4. We went to the hotel to get a meal. (food)
.....
5. Judy bought some binoculars. (pair)
.....
6. I need a new book of cheques. (cheque)
.....
7. I'll have some orange juice, please. (glass)
.....
8. The reporter needed some information. (two)
.....

📖 - Exercise 4:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~Can you lend me some pen to write this cheque?~~

Can you lend me a pen to write this cheque?

1. ~~We can't sit here because the grass are wet.~~
.....
2. ~~Do you want a butter on your bread?~~
.....
3. ~~All my belonging was stolen.~~
.....
4. ~~Do you have any informations about hotels?~~
.....
5. ~~The police is questioning two men.~~
.....

6. ~~Can we have two coffee, please?~~
.....
7. ~~The news aren't very good, I'm afraid.~~
.....
8. ~~I just want to go into this shoes shop.~~
.....
9. ~~It's only a short travel by train.~~
.....

- Exercise 5:

Choose the correct form.

- The house is built of stone/a stone.
- Each team wear/wears a different colour.
 - Let me give you an advice/a piece of advice.
 - Everyone was watching the football match/the match of football.
 - We had to take our luggage through customs/a customs.
 - The band is/are proud of their success.
 - I haven't got many/much friends.
 - Three hours is/are long enough to look round the museum.
 - I wear this glass/these glasses when I go out.
 - My father had a job at the steelwork/steelworks.
 - We couldn't find an/any accommodation.
 - Do you eat meat/a meat?
 - The contents of the box was/were thrown away.
 - Noise/A noise woke me up in the middle of the night.
 - Cattle was/were driven hundreds of miles by the cowboys.
 - One of the windows is/are open.
 - What would it be like to travel at the speed of light/a light?
 - Is there a sport club/sports club near here?
 - E-mail is a relatively new mean/means of communication.
 - We make furniture out of many different wood/woods.
 - Someone has/have kidnapped the President!

BAI 68:

A/AN and THE
(A/an và the) - Exercise 1:

Complete this true story. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

► A man decided to rob (1)..... bank in the town where he lived. He walked into (2)..... bank and handed (3)..... note to one of (4)..... cashiers. (5)..... cashier read (6)..... note, which told her to give (7)..... man some money. Afraid that he might have (8)..... gun, she did as she was told. (9)..... man then walked out of (10)..... building, leaving (11)..... note behind. However, he had no time to spend (12)..... money because he was arrested (13)..... same day. He had made (14)..... mistake. He had written (15)..... note on (16)..... back of (17)..... envelope. And on (18)..... other side of (19)..... envelope was his name and address. This clue was quite enough for (20)..... detectives on the case.

 - Exercise 2:

Replace the sentences which contain an underlined word. Use *a/an* or *the* with the word in brackets.

► We didn't have much time for lunch. David made something for us. (omelette)

David made an omelette for us.

1. They ran the race before they held the long jump. Matthew won it easily. (race)

2. The driver turned left. Suddenly someone ran into the road. (child)

3. Vicky was lying on the sofa. She was watching something on television. (film)
.....
4. I had to take a train and then a bus. It was half an hour late. (bus)
.....
5. A shoplifter tried to steal some clothes. The camera videoed her. (thief)
.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

- Laura: Look outside. *The* sky is getting very dark.
Trevor: I hope there isn't going to be *a* storm.
1. Mike: I'm going out for..... walk. Have you seen my shoes?
Harriet: Yes, they're on..... floor in..... kitchen.
 2. Melanie: Would you like..... tomato? There's one in..... fridge.
David: Oh, yes, please. I'll make myself.....cheese and tomato sandwich.
 3. Sarah: If you're going into..... city centre, can you post these letters for me?
Mark: Yes, I'll take them to..... main post office.
 4. Rita: I've got..... problem with my phone bill. Can I see someone about it?
Receptionist: Yes, go to..... fifth floor..... lift is along the corridor.
 5. Tom: I didn't know Melanie had..... dog.
David: It isn't hers. She's just taking it for a walk while..... owner is away.
 6. Vicky: I've got..... headache. I've had it all day.
Rachel: Why don't you go to..... health centre? It's open until six.
 7. Andrew: Guess what. I found..... £50 note on the pavement this morning.
Jessica: You really ought to take it to police station, you know.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Complete these sentences about pollution and the environment. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

- There was *a* programme on television about dangers to *the* environment.
1. There was also..... article about pollution..... in paper.
 2. ozone layer will continue to disappear if we don't find..... way to stop it.
 - 3..... world's weather is changing. Pollution is having..... effect on our climate.
 4. Last week..... oil tanker spilled oil into..... sea, damaging wildlife.
 5. Some professors have signed..... letter of protest and have sent it to..... government.
 6. If..... earth was human being, it would be in hospital.

📖 - Exercise 5:

Put in the abbreviations with *a* or *an*.

- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| ► a Personal Assistant | <i>a PA</i> |
| ► a National Broadcasting Company reporter | <i>an NBC reporter</i> |
| 1. a Disc Jockey | ..... |
| 2. a Very Important Person | ..... |
| 3. an Irish Republican Army member | ..... |
| 4. a Personal Computer | ..... |
| 5. a Los Angeles suburb | ..... |
| 6. an Unidentified Flying Object | ..... |
| 7. an Annual General Meeting | ..... |
| 8. a Member of Parliament | ..... |

BÀI 69:

A/AN, ONE and SOME

(A/an, one và some)

📏 - Exercise 1:

Paul has painted some pictures for a competition. Say what is in the pictures. Use a or some with these words: *birds, cat, fish, flowers, fruit, luggage, people*



► *some people*

► *a fish*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

📏 - Exercise 2:

Put in *a/an* or *one*.

► Have you only got *one* bedroom? I thought you had two.

1. Melanie wanted something to drink. She was looking for.....café.
2. It was Sunday..... shop was open, but all the others were closed.
3. of these photos is of you. Would you like it?
4. Shall I take..... photo of you two together?

📖 - Exercise 3:

Match each word with the right explanation and write sentences with *a/an*.

<u>carrot</u>	line of people	► <i>A carrot is a vegetable.</i>
violin	book of maps	1.....
queue	<u>vegetable</u>	2.....
atlas	tool for digging	3.....
spade	musical instrument	4.....

📖 - Exercise 4:

What would you say in these situations? Use a noun and decide if you need *some* or not.

- You and your friend would like a game of cards, but **neither** of you has a pack.

We need *some cards*.

- You are describing Rachel to someone. Rachel's hair is dark.
Rachel has *dark hair*.

- You are eating nuts. Offer them to your friend.
Would you like
- You want a drink of mineral water. There's a jug on the table, but you don't know what's in it.
Is there..... in this jug?
- You've come home from a shopping trip with a few clothes. Tell your friend.
I've bought
- You are eating some bread that Melanie baked. It's lovely.
Melanie, this is
- The two women who live next door to you are both studying at the university.
Tell your visitor. The women next door are

BÀI 70:

THE
(Mạo từ the)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Answer these questions in the way shown.

- Was it a good film? ~ Yes, it was *the best film* I've ever seen.
1. Is it is big hotel? ~ Yes, it is..... in the city.
 2. Is he a rich man? ~ Yes, he is..... I've ever met.
 3. Was it a bad accident? ~ Yes, it was..... you will find.
 4. Is it a cheap restaurant? ~ Well, it is..... you will find.
 5. It's hot today, isn't it? ~ Yes, it is..... day of the year.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in *a/an* or *the*. Sometimes you don't need either word you put a tick (X)

- We went to *the* most expensive restaurant in town.
1. I wrote my name at..... top of the page.
 2. moon goes round..... earth every 27 days.
 3. The Soviet Union was..... first country to send a man into..... space.
 4. Did you see the film on..... television or at..... cinema?
 5. After..... lunch, we went for a walk by..... sea.
 6. I'm not very hungry. I had..... big breakfast.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Put in *the* where necessary. If you don't need *the*, put a tick (X)

- I haven't been to the cinema for X ages.
- I lay down on *the* ground and looked up at *the* sky.
1. Mary spends most of her free time watching..... television.
 2. television was on but nobody was watching it.
 3. Have you had..... dinner yet?
 4. Karen and I arrived at..... same time.
 5. You'll find..... information you need at..... top of..... page 15.

BÀI 71:

PLACE NAMES AND THE (Địa danh đi /không đi kèm mạo từ "the")

- Exercise 1:

How much do you know about geography? Put in these names *Andes, Brussels, Irish Republic, Italy, Lake Michigan, River Nile, North, Pennsylvania, Tasmania, United Kingdom, West Indies*

Decide if you need *the*.

► Harrisburg is the capital of *Pennsylvania*.

► Dublin is in *the Irish Republic*.

1. Chicago lies on the shore of.....

2. Sicily is a part of.....

3..... are a mountain range in South America.

4..... is England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

5..... is an island to the south of Australia.

6. Jamaica is an island in.....

7..... flows through Egypt.

8..... is the capital of Belgium.

9. Manchester is in..... of England.

- Exercise 2:

Complete these sentences from a guide to London. Put in the word and decide if you need *the*.

► The train to Paris leaves from *Waterloo Station* (Waterloo Station).

► *The National Theatre* (National Theatre) is south of the river.

1. You can take a trip by boat along..... (Thames).

2. The Serpentine is a lake in..... (Hyde Park).

3. You can get to..... (Heathrow Airport) by underground.

4. Nelson's Column is in..... (Trafalgar Square).

5. Walk a little way along..... (Westminster Bridge).

6. From there you get a view of..... (Houses of Parliament).

7. The Queen lives at..... (Buckingham Palace).

8. Earl's Court is in..... (West London).
 9..... (M1 motorway) goes north from London.
 10..... (Ritz) is a very elegant hotel.

□ - Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in the words and decide if you need *the*.

Sarah: We've just been to (►) *the States* (States) - to (1).....
 (New York).

Claire: Oh, really? I was there at Christmas. Were you on holiday?

Sarah: Yes, and we really needed a break. It was wonderful. We saw
 (2)..... (Statue of Liberty), and we walked in
 (3)..... (Central Park). We did all the sights. We spent a
 day in (4)..... (Metropolitan Museum of Art). And we
 walked along (5)..... (Broadway) and around
 (6)..... (Macy's) department store.

Claire: Where did you stay?

Sarah: In a small hotel near (7)..... (Washington Square), not
 far from (8)..... (New York University).

Claire: Last time I was there I stayed at (9)..... (Paramount). It's
 a nice hotel close to (10)..... (Broadway).

□ - Exercise 4:

A woman is asking Trevor the way. Put in the words and decide if you need *the*.

Woman: Excuse me, can you tell me the way to (►) *Millthorpe Station*
 (Millthorpe Station)?

Trevor: Yes, go along here and turn left by (1)..... (Little
 Theatre) opposite a building called (2)..... (Kingston
 House).

The road is (3)..... (Wood Lane). Go along there,
 straight across (4)..... (High Street), past
 (5)..... (Royal Hotel), and you'll see the station in front
 of you.

Woman: Thank you very much.

📖 - Exercise 5:

Look at the addresses and write the sentences.

Useful addresses for visitors to Seaport	
- Seaport Bus Station, Queen's Road	- King Edward College, College Road
- Grand Theatre, George Street	- St John's Church, South Street
- Odeon Cinema, The Avenue	- Webster's department store, High Street
- Clarendon Art Gallery, Newton Lane	- Bristol Hotel, Westville Way

► Seaport Bus Station *is in Queen's Road.*

1. The Grand Theatre.....
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

📖 - Exercise 6:

Write the headlines of the articles in this month's edition of 'Holiday', a travel magazine.

► walk / along / Princes Street.

A walk along Princes Street

► holiday / in / Bahamas

A holiday in the Bahamas

1. day / at / Blenheim Palace
2. train journey / in / North Wales
3. tour / of / White House
4. beach / on / Riviera
5. shopping trip / to / Harrods
6. small town / in / France
7. trip / across / Severn Bridge

-
8. walk / around / Lake Windermere
9. visit / to / Tower Bridge
10. journey/across/Rockies
11. look / around / National Gallery
12. boat trip / along / Oxford Canal

BÀI 72:

QUITE A, SUCH A, WHAT A, etc.
(Quite a, such a, what a, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

What do you say in these situations?

- ▶ You're telling someone about the show you saw. It was quite good.
 You should go and see it. It's *quite a good show*.
- ▶ You are describing Harriet to someone who doesn't know her. She is fairly tall.
 Well, Harriet is a *fairly tall woman*.
- 1. You're talking about the Savoy Hotel, which is very brand.
 Yes. I know the Savoy. It's.....
- 2. You are talking about your journey. It was quite tiring.
 I travelled a long way. It was.....
- 3. You are telling someone about Claire's flat. It's really big.
 I've been to Claire's place. It's
- 4. You are telling a friend about your meal with Tom. It was quite nice.
 We went to that new restaurant. We had

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in *so* or *such*.

Sarah: Sorry I'm (▶) *so* late. We had (▶) *such* a lot to do at work.

Mark: You shouldn't do (1)..... much.

Sarah: The boss gets m (2)..... a panic about things. She makes
 (3)..... a big fuss.

Mark: Well, you shouldn't be (4)..... willing to work
 (5)..... long hours. No wonder you're (6).....
 tired. You'll make yourself ill, you know.

Exercise 3:

Match the sentences and combine them using *so* or *such*.

► Sarah was late home.	All the tickets sold out.
► Mike hadn't cooked for a long time.	He wouldn't speak to anyone.
1. The piano was heavy.	<u>He'd almost forgotten how to.</u>
2. Tom was annoyed about United losing.	It kept all the neighbours awake.
3. The band was a big attraction.	<u>Mark had already gone to bed.</u>
4. Vicky had a lot of work to do.	Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
5. The party made a lot of noise.	She was sure she'd never finish it.

- Sarah was so late home that Mark had already gone to bed.
 ► Mike hadn't cooked for such a long time that he'd almost forgotten how to.

1.
 2.
 3.
 4.
 5.

Exercise 4:

Put in *what* or *what a*.

- Come into the sitting-room. ~ Thank you. Oh, *what a* nice room!
 1. Vicky believes in ghosts. ~ Oh, nonsense she talks!
 2. Let's go for a midnight swim. ~ suggestion!
 3. I think about you all the time, Emma. ~ lies you tell me, Matthew.

TEST 14

- Exercise 1:

Complete the story about the theft of a river barge. Put in *a, an, one* or *the*.

This is (►) *a* true story about (1)..... man who chose (2)..... worst possible time for his crime. It happened in London in (3)..... summer of 1972. (4)..... man stole a barge on (5)..... River Thames (in case you don't know, (6)..... barge is a river boat used for carrying goods). (7)..... owner of (8)..... barge soon discovered that it was missing and immediately informed (9)..... police so that they could look for it. Normally (10)..... river is quite (11)..... busy place, and it would be difficult to find what you were looking for. On this day, however, there was (12)..... dock strike, and so there was only (13)..... barge on (14)..... river. (15)..... thief was quickly found and arrested.

- Exercise 2:

Decide which word or words are correct.

► I think that's an awful thing to say.

- a) a awful b) an awful c) awful

1. Judy goes to..... on the bus.

- a) work b) a work c) the work

2. I don't know what to do. It's..... problem.

- a) quite difficult b) a quite difficult c) quite a difficult

3..... is my favourite sport.

- a) Golf b) A golf c) The golf

4..... starts at nine o'clock.

- a) School b) A school c) The school.

5. We had..... time at the disco yesterday.

- a) really nice b) a really nice c) really a nice

6. Nigel opened a drawer and took out.....
 a) photos b) a photos c) some photos
7. Did you learn to play.....?
 a) violin b) a violin c) the violin
8. We can finish the rest of the bread for.....
 a) breakfast b) a breakfast c) the breakfast
9. While I was in hospital, they gave me.
 a) X-ray b) a X-ray c) an X-ray
10. I might listen to.....
 a) radio b) radios c) the radio
11. We need to protect..... from pollution.
 a) environment b) some environment c) the environment
12. Why do they always play..... music?
 a) so terrible b) such terrible c) such a terrible

- Exercise 3:

Read the story about a silly mistake and decide if a word needs to go in the space. If a word is missing, write the word. If no word is missing, write *.

This is also (►) a true story. It shows how (►) * plans can sometimes go wrong and how (1)..... people can make silly mistakes. This too happened quite (2)..... long time ago - in (3)..... 1979, in fact. The scene was (4)..... old people's home in (5)..... small town in (6)..... north of England called (7)..... Otley. The owners of the home wanted to put (8)..... fence around it to make it more private. The work began soon after (9)..... Christmas when (10)..... workmen arrived in (11)..... lorry with planks of wood which they put up around the building. "It was (12)..... very nice fence" said (13)..... of the old people. But there was (14)..... problem. The workmen forgot to leave a gap for the lorry to drive out through. They had to come back the next day to knock down part of (15)..... fence. "(16)..... a silly mistake!" said another resident. "It was (17)..... funny we had to laugh. In fact it was (18)..... most fun we've had for a long time."

📖 - Exercise 4:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- | | |
|---|------------|
| ▶ The space capsule came down in the Pacific. | ✓ |
| ▶ My new job starts in the April. | <i>the</i> |
| 1. I was so tired I went to bed at nine. | ..... |
| 2. We had a very good lunch in the company canteen. | ..... |
| 3. The life just isn't fair sometimes. | ..... |
| 4. What the clever children you have! | ..... |
| 5. We went out and bought some pictures. | ..... |
| 6. Tessa was still working at the midnight. | ..... |
| 7. I drive past the hospital every morning. | ..... |
| 8. A one boy was much taller than all the others. | ..... |
| 9. It costs such a lot of money, you know. | ..... |
| 10. I'll meet you outside the National Gallery. | ..... |
| 11. Have you any idea who invented the fridge? | ..... |

📖 - Exercise 5:

Complete the conversation. Put in the words and decide if you need *a*, *an*, *some* or *the*.

Martin: I think we ought to book (▶) *a holiday* (holiday). Where shall we go?

Anna: What about (▶) *Scotland* (Scotland)? I think Edinburgh is (1)..... (beautiful city). I love going there.

Martin: (2)..... (weather) might not be very good. We went there at (3)..... (Easter), and it was freezing, remember.

Anna: We could have a walk along (4)..... (Princes Street) and up to the castle. And I wanted to go to (5)..... (Royal Scottish Museum), but we never found time.

Martin: Can't we go somewhere different?

Anna: We could spend some time in (6)..... (Highlands), I suppose.

Martin: When I go on holiday, I want to do something more relaxing than climbing (7)..... (mountains). And I find it pretty boring.

How can you say such (8)..... (thing)?

Martin: Actually, I'd prefer somewhere warmer and by (9)..... I think (10)..... (Corfu) would be nice. We might get (11)..... (sunshine) there. I just want to lie on a beach.

Anna: Martin, you know I'm not at all keen on (12)..... (beach holidays).

BÀI 73:

THIS, THAT, THESE and THOSE

(This, that, these và those)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write each of the words (this, that, these, those) in the correct place.

	Near	Further away
Singular		
Plural		

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences. Use *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*, and these nouns: car, dog, flowers, parcel, trees.



► *That car* has crashed into the gate.

1. Would you like.....?
2. I must post.....?
3. The house is behind.....?
4. Whose is.....?

📖 - Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations. Use *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*

► Jessica: Are we going out *this* morning?

Mike: I can't really. I must go the office early.

1. Mark: I hear you've got a new flat.

Rita: 's right. I've just moved in.

-
2. Sarah: What's the matter?
Vicky: It's.....boots. They don't fit properly. They're hurting my feet.
3. Laura: It's so boring here.
Alan: I know. Nothing ever happen inplace.
4. Vicky: What's happened? You look terrible.
Laura: You won't believe....., but I've just seen a ghost.
5. Emma: What kind of cars are.....?
Trevor: I don't know. They're too far away to see properly.
6. Mathew: The match is four weeks from today.
Mike: Sorry, I won't be able to play for the team. I'll be away all.....week.
7. Daniel: Daniel. Can I help you?
Rachel: Hello.is Daniel. Can I speak to Trevor, please?
8. Daniel: I've hadbump on my head ever since someone threw a chair at me.
Sarah: Someone threw a chair at you?wasn't a very nice thing to do.
9. Mark:seats aren't very comfortable, are they?
Natasa: No, I don't think. I'll want to sit here very long.

BÀI 74:

MY, YOUR, ...and MINE, YOURS,...
(My, your,... và mine, yours,...)

 - **Exercise 1:**

Complete the conversation. Put in the missing words.

Vicky: Did you and (►) *your* family have a nice holiday?

Sarah: Yes, it was wonderful. We had the best holiday of (1).....lives. It didn't start very well, though. My brother forgot to bring (2)..... passport.

Vicky: Oh, dear. So what happened?

Sarah: Well, luckily we don't live far from the airport. He rang (3)our grandmother and grandfather, and they brought the passport over in (4)..... car, just in time.

Vicky: You remembered (5)....., I hope.

Sarah: Yes, I had (6)....., even though I'm usually the one who forgets things. Actually my sister thought for a minute that she'd lost (7)..... Luckily it was in (8).....suitcase. Anyway, in the end we had a marvellous time.

 - **Exercise 2:**

Put in *its, it's*.

► I have seen that hat over there. *It's* very nice.

1. I don't like this city because very noisy.
2. You should return the mobile phone to.....owner immediately.
3. They wanted to play football, but.....raining.
4. Laura's bought a new bike.colour is very lovely.

 - **Exercise 3:**

Put in *my, you, etc. or the*

► I was doing keep-fit exercises when I fell down and hurt *my* leg.

1. Jim served, and the ball hit Justin on knee

2. I put botharms around the child.
3. Don't just stand there with.....hands in.....pockets.
4. Daniel kissed Vicky on.....cheek.
5. The fans were all shouting at the top of.....voices.

 - Exercise 4:

Correct the sentences which have a mistake.

► She hopes Trevor will be here. ~~She's got some CDs from his.~~
She's got some CDs of his.

1. His friends swim every day. ~~They've got their only pool.~~
.....
2. I don't want to share. ~~I'd like my very room.~~
.....
3. They're lucky. ~~They've got an own garden.~~
.....
4. I enjoy stamp-collecting. ~~It's a favourite hobby to me.~~
.....
5. Tom met some nice people. ~~Emma introduced him to a friend of herseft.~~
.....

BÀI 75:

THE POSSESSIVE FORM and OF
(Dạng sở hữu cách và of)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write description of the things in the photos. Use *boy, girl and children* and these words: *bike, cat, dog, skateboards, tent, trophies*

► *the children's dog*

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Mary Spears writes detective stories. Here are the titles of some of her stories. Write the titles using either of or a possessive form (with 's or s').

- the death / someone important *The Death of Someone Important*
 the gun / Mr. Timberlake *Mr. Timberlake's Gun*

1. the airplane / the terrorist
2. the smell / meal
3. the advice / the policeman
4. the middle / the day
5. the money / the owner
6. the front / the house

📖 - Exercise 3:

Rewrite the underlined phrases using a possessive form.

- I'll see my mother in a year. *in a year's time.*
- It's the special offer for this week. *this week's special offer*
1. The prices this month are even lower.
 2. Tom just wants a rest of fifteen minutes.
 3. She read about it in the paper yesterday.
 4. From Liverpool to here it's a drive of three hours.

BÀI 76:

SOME and ANY
 (Some và any)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and say what people *have* or *haven't got*. Use *some* or *any*. Use these words: *cats*, *money*, *petrol*, *poison*, *sandwiches*



► They've got *some* sandwiches.

► She hasn't got *any* money.

1.
2.
3.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Justin Cooper is a radio disc jockey. Complete what he is saying. Put in *some* or *any*.

That was 'I can't find (►) *any* love' by Arlene Black. Now, I've had (►) *some* letters asking for something by Express. One listener says she hasn't heard (1)..... Express songs on this programme for months. Well, I'm going to put that right. And this will be our last track because there isn't (2)..... more time left. We've had (3)..... great songs tonight, and I'll be here next week to play (4)..... more. Now here's (5)..... music from Express – "I never have (6)..... luck".

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations. Put in *some, any, anyone, someone, something or anything*.

► Trevor: We haven't got *any* bread.

Laura: You'd better go to the shop, then. We need *some* tomatoes, too.

1. Claire: Would you like..... cheese and biscuits?

Sarah: Oh, no thank you. That was delicious, but I couldn't eat..... else.

2. Harriet: There's..... at the door.

Mike: Are we expecting..... visitors?

3. Melanie: Has offered to help you with the tea?

Rita: No, but I'd be very grateful for..... help you can give.

4. Vicky: I was looking for....., and now I can't remember what it was.

Rachel: You said you were looking for..... matches.

- Exercise 4:

Put in *any + noun, anyone or anything*.

► The seats aren't reserved. You can have *any seat* you like.

► I don't mind what we do today. We can do *anything* you want.

1. If it's your party, you can invite..... you like.

2. All the buses go into the town centre. Take..... that comes along here.

3. This carpet is available in lots of colours. You can have..... you like.

4. My father has the television on all the time. He'll watch.....

5. It doesn't matter which day you phone. Ring..... you like.

BÀI 77:

A LOT OF, LOTS OF, MANY, MUCH, (A) FEW and (A) LITTLE

(A lot of, lots of, many, much, (a) few và (a) little)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write the sentences correctly.

► Mark was only spending one night away. ~~He quickly put a little things into a bag.~~

He quickly put a few things into a bag.

1. Rachel is learning to drive. ~~She hasn't had much lessons yet.~~

2. I'm making soup for twenty people. ~~I'll have to make a lot of.~~

3. I feel really tired. ~~I haven't got many energy.~~

4. The mixture looks rather dry. ~~Maybe you should add a few water.~~

5. We're having a big party. ~~We've invited a lots of friends.~~

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in *a lot of*, *many* or *much*. More than one answer may be correct.

Matthew: There are (►) *a lot of* athletes taking part in the International Games in London. There's been (1)..... coverage in the papers.

Daniel : Our runners haven't won (2)..... medals, have they?

Matthew: No, not as (3)..... as last time. But there's plenty of time. There are still (4)..... events to come. I'd like to go and see some of the track events, but I haven't got (5)..... time at the moment.

Daniel : No, not with exams coming up.

- Matthew : I'm hoping to go at the weekend if I can get a ticket.
Apparently there aren't (6)..... seats left.
- Daniel : I've heard the cheapest tickets are £25. I think that's too
(7).....

📖 - Exercise 3:

Put in a few, few, a little or little.

- ▶ I don't think I can lift this box on my own. I need *a little* help.
- ▶ *Few* tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.
- 1. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive..... letters.
- 2. The snow was quite deep. There seemed..... hope of completing our journey.
- 3. Trevor isn't finding it easy to fix the shelves. He's having..... trouble.
- 4. Sarah is exhausted. She's having..... days' holiday next week.
- 5. David quite likes golf, but unfortunately he has..... ability.
- 6. I can speak..... words of Swedish, but I'm not very fluent.

📖 - Exercise 4:

Complete this paragraph from a travel book. Put in *many, few, much* or *little*.

The main town on the island is very small and does not have (▶) *many* important buildings. The islanders do not have (1)..... money, and they have (2)..... contact with the outside world. There is not (3)..... chance of the place attracting large numbers of tourists. The roads are not very good. There are lots of bicycles but not (4)..... cars. And there are hardly any of the modern facilities which visitors expect. There are (5)..... shops, and there is (6)..... entertainment.

BÀI 78:**ALL, HALF, MOST, SOME, NO and NONE**
(All, half, most, some, no và none)**📖 - Exercise 1:**

Read this advertisement for some new flats and then complete the sentences. Put in *all of them, most of them, half of them, some of them* and *none of them*.

Hartley House is an old manor house which has been converted into thirty one-bedroom and two bedroom flats. All the flats have a fitted kitchen, bathroom and large living-room. Ten of them have a separate dining-room. Twenty-five of the flats have a view of the sea, and fifteen have a private balcony. All thirty flats are still for sale. Ring us now for more details.

► The flats are modern. *All of them* have a fitted kitchen.

1. have two bedrooms.
2. From..... you can see the sea.
3. have a private balcony.
4. have a large living-room.
5. There's also a dining-room in.....
6. has been sold yet.

📖 - Exercise 2:

There was a quiz evening yesterday. Six friends took part, and they all answered twenty questions. Did they get *all, most, some* or *none of them* right?

- Natasha answered all twenty correctly.
She got all of them right.
- Daniel's score was fifteen.
He got most of them right.

1. Jessica had only eight correct answers.
.....

2. Matthew got them all right except three.
.....

3. Andrew gave twenty correct answers.
.....

4. But poor Vicky didn't get a single one right.
.....

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations. Use the word in brackets with *all*, *all the*, *most*, *most of the*, *no* or *none of the*.

► Andrew: I wonder where they make this milk.

Jessica: It isn't made in a factory, Andrew. *All milk* (milk) comes from animals.

► Rita: What do you usually do on a Sunday?

Mike: Not much. We spend *most of the time* (time) reading the papers.

1. Claire: In general, people aren't interested in politics, are they?

Mark: I think..... (people) are bored by the subject.

2. Vicky: These new flats are supposed to be for students.

Rachel: That's ridiculous..... (student) in the world could possibly afford such a high rent.

3. Tom: Who's paying for the new ice-rink to be built?

Nick: Well,..... (money) will come from the government, but the city has to pay a quarter of the cost.

4. Melanie: We should ban cars..... (cars) pollute the air, don't they?

David: Well, except electric ones, I suppose.

5. Vicky: What kind of fruit should you eat to stay healthy?

Natasha: I don't think it matters..... (fruit) is good for you, isn't it?

6. Tom: I knew there had been a power cut because it was so dark everywhere.

Harriet: Yes,..... (lights) in our street went out.

BAI 79:

**EVERY, EACH, WHOLE, BOTH, EITHER
and NEITHER****(Every, each, whole, both, either và neither)** **- Exercise 1:**

Complete the dialogue. Put in *every* or *each*. Sometimes both are possible.

Laura: It's a lot bigger than your last house, isn't it? Did you say there are four people living here?

Natasha: Yes, and we (►) each have our own bedroom.

Laura: Does (1)..... person pay a quarter of the rent?

Natasha: That's right. On the first of (2)..... month.

Laura: It must be fantastic for parties.

Natasha: Yes, it is. We don't have one (3)..... week, but almost!

Laura: Isn't that rather expensive?

Natasha: Not if (4)..... guest brings something to eat or drink! Anyway, there'll be no more parties until our exams are over. We're spending (5)..... moment revising.

 - Exercise 2:

Put in *every*, *all* or *the whole* and the word in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

► Melanie is a religious person. She goes to church *every Sunday* (Sunday).

1. The weather has been awful today. It's been raining..... (day).

2. I just can't sleep. I spent..... (night) lying awake.

3. Sarah gets the train at half past seven..... (morning).

4. It's eleven o'clock. Are you going to lie in bed..... (morning)?

5. Last Saturday Trevor spent..... (day) putting up some shelves.

6. Why are you in such a hurry..... (time) I see you?

1 - Exercise 3:

Here are two pubs in Brickfield, The White Horse and The Ship. Look at the information and then write the sentences. Use *both of them*, *one of them* or *neither of them*.

THE WHITE HORSE

MEALS BAR SNACKS FAMILY ROOM

THE SHIP

MEALS SEPARATE RESTAURANT

BAR SNACKS NON-SMOKING AREA

(serve meals) *Both of them serve meals.*

1. (have a separate restaurant)
2. (serve bar snacks)
3. (have a family room).....
4. (allow pub games).....
5. (have live music).....
6. (have a non-smoking area)

1 - Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Put in *every*, *each*, *whole*, *both*, *either* or *neither*.

Assistant: These plain sofas come in two different styles.

Paul: I think (1) *both* styles are rather old-fashioned. (1).....
 of them is really what I want. I don't like (2)..... of
 them, I'm afraid.

Assistant: What about a patterned fabric? There are some lovely colours
 here.

Paul: I feel more and more unsure with (3)..... new fabric I
 look at.

Mark: We haven't got time to look at (4)..... fabric in the
 shop. We've been in here a (5)..... hour already, you
 know.

TEST 15 - Exercise 1:

Look at what people are saying and choose the correct meaning.

► Polly: Let's sit under these trees, shall we?

The trees are

- a) ☒ near Polly.
- b) ☐ a long way away from Polly.

1. Martin: My friend and I ate a whole loaf.

Martin and his friend ate

- a) ☐ part of the loaf.
- b) ☐ all the loaf.

2. Nigel: The girls' dog has gone missing.

The dog belongs to

- a) ☐ one girl.
- b) ☐ more than one girl.

3. Tessa: My brother has got his own office.

Tessa's brother

- a) ☐ works alone in the office.
- b) ☐ shares the office with another person.

4. Nancy: The weather looks a little better, I think.

How does Nancy feel about the weather?

- a) ☐ Hopeful.
- b) ☐ Not very hopeful.

5. Ben: I can't answer either of these questions.

How many questions is Ben talking about?

- a) ☐ One.
- b) ☐ Two.
- c) ☐ More than two.

6. Adrian: The children can keep any tennis balls they find.

Will they find any tennis balls?

- a) ☐ Yes.
- b) ☐ No.
- c) ☐ Adrian doesn't know.

□ - Exercise 2:

Decide which word is correct.

- What colour shall we have? - I don't mind. Pick *any* colour you like.
) any b) some c) that d) what
 . Peter has two brothers, but he doesn't speak to..... of them.
) any b) both c) either d) neither
 has left a bicycle outside.
) Anyone b) Anything c) Someone d) Something
 . I like..... pictures here. - Yes, so do I.
) that b) these c) this d) those
 . Would you mind waiting minutes?
) a few b) a little c) few d) little
 countries still have a king or a queen, don't they?
 Any b) Half c) Part d) Some
 . Safety should come first..... lives shouldn't be put at risk.
) People b) Peoples c) People's d) Peoples'
 . Nigel isn't very well. - Oh, I'm sorry to hear.....
) so b) that c) this d) you
 . Mr. Jones is an uncle of.....
) Polly b) Pollys c) Polly's d) Pollys'

□ - Exercise 3:

Tessa is walking along the street when she sees her old friend Angela. Lead the conversation and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Tessa: Hello, Angela. How are you?

Angela: Tessa! Hello! Shall we have lunch together?

Tessa: I was just going to the bank to get (►) *some* money. I have to be back at the office in (1)..... few minutes. My life's one mad rush.

Angela: So is (2)..... I'm working for Tuffex Plastics now. And my daughter has invited friends (3)..... hers to stay. I wish I didn't have so (4) things to do at once.

Tessa: I'm glad I've run into you. I never see (5)..... else from our old gang. (6)..... of them seem to be around any more.

Angela: I think they've (7).....moved away, except us two. Carol went to Japan.

Tessa: Angela, would you like to come for a meal some time?

Angela: Oh, that would be lovely. We'll certainly have a (8)..... to talk about.

Tessa: Maybe we'll need a (9)..... day. What about the Saturday after next?

- Exercise 4:

Each of the sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~Are you going on holiday that year?~~

Are you going on holiday this year?

1. ~~That was a very good idea of you.~~

2. ~~You've got a lot books, haven't you?~~

3. ~~I don't know the meeting's time.~~

4. ~~Nigel has hurt the leg.~~

5. ~~All rooms in the house were cold.~~

6. ~~Wear everything it doesn't matter what.~~

7. ~~Every of the four doors was locked.~~

8. ~~I live my life, and my sister lives her.~~

9. ~~The both socks have got holes in them.~~

10. ~~Here's a copy of this week magazine.~~

11. ~~This sweater is losing it's colour.~~

12. ~~I want some paper, but there's no in here.~~

📖 - Exercise 5:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- When I was on holiday, it rained all week. (whole)

When I was on holiday, it rained the whole week.

1. I've lived here more than half my life. (most)

.....

2. All the hotels were full. (every)

.....

3. The house on the corner is bigger than our house. (ours)

.....

4. I've forgotten my doctor's name. (of)

.....

5. We haven't had much warning of the changes. (little)

.....

6. Such a large number of people have applied for the job. (so)

.....

7. I met one of your old boyfriends at a party. (an)

.....

8. Both the chairs are uncomfortable. (neither)

.....

9. My holiday starts ten days from now. (time)

.....

BAI 80:

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, e.g. I, YOU

(Đại từ nhân xưng: I, you, ...)

- Exercise 1:

Read the conversation between Melanie and Rita. Then say what the underlined pronouns mean.

- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| Melanie: Have (►) <u>you</u> been in that new shop? | ► you = <i>Rita</i> |
| Rita: No, not yet. | |
| Melanie: Nor have I, but (►) <u>it</u> looks interesting. | ► it = <i>the shop</i> |
| There's a lovely dress in the window, and (1) <u>it</u> isn't expensive. | 1. it = |
| Rita: Laura bought some jeans there. (2) <u>She</u> said | 2. she = |
| (3) <u>they</u> were really cheap. | 3. they = |
| Melanie: (4) <u>You</u> ought to go along there and have a look, then. | 4. you = |
| Rita: (5) <u>We</u> 'd better not go now or we'll be late. | 5. we = |
| (6) <u>I</u> told Mike and Harriet we'd meet | 6. I = |
| (7) <u>them</u> at half past five. | 7. them = |
| Melanie: Oh, Tom said (8) <u>he</u> 's coming too. | 8. he = |

- Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in the pronouns.

Nick: Did (►) you say that you and Harriet wanted some coloured lights for your party?

Mike: Yes, but (►) it's OK. Melanie's neighbour Jake has got some, and (1)..... 's going to lend (2)..... to (3).....

Nick: Great. Is Rita coming to the party?

Mike: We've invited (4)..... of course, but (5)..... isn't sure if (6)..... can come or not. Her parents are flying somewhere on Saturday evening, and she might be taking (7)..... to the airport.

Nick: And what about Laura's friend Emily?

Mike: I expect (8).....'ll be there. And her brother.
(9)..... both came to our last party.

Nick: Do (10)..... mean Jason? I don't like (11).....
very much.

Mike: Oh, (12).....'s OK. But (13)..... don't have to
talk to (14).....

- Exercise 3:

Put in the pronouns.

► There's no need to shout. I can hear *you*.

1. You and I work well together.'re a good team.
2. We've got a bit of a problem. Could..... help.....,
please?
3. This is a good photo, isn't.....? - Is Jessica in.....? -
Yes, that's....., look.'s next to Andrew.
4. Who did this crossword? ~..... I did..... this
morning.
5. Is this Vicky's bag? - No, didn't bring one. It can't belong
to.....
- 6.....'m looking for my shoes. Have.....
seen.....? - Yes,.....'re here.

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Put in *you* or *they*.

Trevor: I'm not going to drive in this weather. It's too icy.

Laura: (►) *You* don't want to take any risks. (1)..... can't be too
careful.

Trevor: I've just heard the weather forecast and (2)..... say
there's going to be more snow. (3).....'re better off
indoors in weather like this.

Laura: I think (4)..... ought to clear the snow off the roads more
quickly.

BÀI 81:

THERE and IT
(There và it)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and comment on what you see. Use these words:
*a balloon, some boxes, the car, a dinosaur, an elephant, some flowers,
 the garden, her hat, the sky, the water*



- *There's a dinosaur in the water.*
 ► *There are some flowers on her hat.*

1.
2.
3.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in **there** and a form of **be**, e.g. **is, are, was, have been** or **will be**.

- Victor: *Are there* any restaurants here that open on a Sunday?
 Rachel: *There's* a cafe in the High Street which is open for lunch.
1. Alan: a train at twelve thirty, isn't there? Let's catch that one.
 Mark: OK time to finish our discussion on the train.
 2. Vicky: What's happened? Why so many police cars here?
 Daniel: a hold-up at the bank.
 3. Tom: Last night a party next door. I couldn't get to sleep.
 Melanie: must a lot of people there.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Rewrite the sentences in brackets using *it*.

► We sometimes go surfing. (Surfing is really good fun.)

It's really good fun.

1. I bought a shirt in the market. (The shirt was very cheap.)

2. Someone rang. (The caller was Vicky.)

3. Our heating is out of order. (The situation is a nuisance.)

4. I've left my coat at home. (The weather is very warm.)

5. Don't lose your credit card. (To keep it somewhere safe is important.)

📖 - Exercise 4:

Put in *there* or *it*.

► Is it the fifteenth today? - No, the sixteenth.

1. The road is closed.....'s been an accident.

2. Take a taxi.....'s a long way to the station.

3. was a motor bike outside. looked very expensive.

4. Will..... be any delays because of the strike? - Well,..... would be a good idea to ring the airline and check.

5. was wet, and was a cold east wind..... was after midnight, and were few people on the streets.

BAI 82:

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS
(Đại từ phản thân)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and write sentences with a reflexive pronoun.
Use these words: *dry, introduce, look at, photograph, teach*

▶ *He's photographing himself*

1. She
2. They
3.
4.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversations. Put in a reflexive pronoun (*myself, yourself, etc.*).

▶ Matthew: I'll get the tickets, shall I?

Emma: It's OK. I can pay for *myself*.

1. Olivia: I've got lots of photos of my children.

Linda: Yes, but you haven't got many of....., Olivia

2. Rita: Did you have a good time at the Holiday Centre?

Laura: Well, there wasn't much going on. We had to amuse.....

3. Emma: Why has the light gone off?

Matthew: It switches.....off automatically.

- Exercise 3:

Put in the correct pronoun (e.g. *me* or *myself*).

- ▶ We looked up and saw a strange animal in front of *us*.
- ▶ Don't tell us the answer to the puzzle. We can work it out for *ourselves*.
- 1. It's a pity you didn't bring your camera with
- 2. Mark talked to the woman sitting next to
- 3. The old man is no longer able to look after
- 4. My mother likes to have all her family near
- 5. To be successful in life, you must believe in

- Exercise 4:

Rachel and Vicky are at Mike and Harriet's party. Complete the conversation. Put in the verbs with or without a reflexive pronoun.

Mike : Have you two (▶) *met* (met) before?

Rachel: Yes, we have. Vicky and I are old friends.

Mike : Oh, right. Well, I hope you (▶) *enjoy yourselves* (enjoy) tonight.

Rachel: I'm sure we will. I (1) (feel) just in the mood for a party.

Mike: Well, please (2) (help) to a drink. Are you OK, Vicky?

Vicky: Sorry, I've got this awful feeling that I have to do something very important, and I can't (3) (remember) what it is.

Rachel: Vicky, you (4) (worry) too much. Come on, just (5) (relax).

BÀI 83:

EMPHATIC PRONOUNS and EACH OTHER **(Đại từ nhấn mạnh và each other)**

☐ - Exercise 1:

Add a sentence with an emphatic pronoun, e.g. *myself*

Use these verbs: *bake*, *clean*, *decorate*, *develop*, *grow*, *paint*, *service*, *type*

► I don't take the car to the garage. *I service it myself.*

► Laura didn't buy those pictures. *She painted them herself.*

1. Jim doesn't have his windows cleaned.....
2. My bread doesn't come from a shop.....
3. My friends eat lots of fresh vegetables.....
4. We finished the dining-room yesterday.....
5. Mark doesn't dictate his letters to a secretary.....
6. I don't pay to have my photos done.....

☐ - Exercise 2:

Put in an emphatic pronoun, e.g. *myself*, *yourself*

► Of course I know about Matthew and Emma. You told me *yourself*.

1. The princess..... visited the children in hospital.
2. The song..... wasn't very good, but the title of the song became a popular phrase.
3. The visitors were welcomed to the school by the headmaster.....
4. The pilots..... are nervous of flying because of terrorist threats.
5. You all know that no one can take your decisions for you. You..... will have to decide.

☐ - Exercise 3:

David and Melanie are in love. Write sentences about them using each other.

- Melanie often writes notes to David. He also often writes notes to Melanie.

They often write notes to each other.

1. David is always thinking about Melanie. She's just the same. She's always thinking about him.

2. Melanie has got lots of photos of David. He's got lots of photos of her, too.

3. They love being together. David enjoys Melanie's company, and she enjoys David's company.

4. Melanie is crazy about David. He feels the same way. He's crazy about Melanie.

- Exercise 4:

Put in *each other*, *ourselves* or *themselves*.

- We could all do more to keep healthy. We don't look after *ourselves* properly.

- The hostess introduced the two guests to *each other*.

1. The two boxers did their best to knock out.
2. We talk to..... in French because it's the only language we both know.
3. People who talk to..... may get strange looks from other people.
4. We'd better set off early to give..... plenty of time to get there.
5. The guards who shot a gunman claimed that they were defending.....
6. Luckily we managed to get two seats next to.....

BÀI 84:

THE PRONOUN ONE/ONES
(Đại từ one/ones)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and complete the conversations.



► blue ✓ black ✗



1 smart ✗ casual ✓



2 big ✓ small ✗



3 white ✗ brown ✓

4 ordinary ✓
electric ✗

- Emma: Can you lend me a pen, please?

Matthew: Do you want *a blue one or a black one*?

Emma: Oh, *a blue one*, please.

1. Mark: I might buy a new jacket.

Sarah: Do you mean.....?

Mark: Oh,..... for when I go on holiday.

2. Jessica: Could you pass me one of those saucepans, please?

Andrew: Do you need.....?

Jessica:, please.

3. Sarah: Could I have a small envelope?

Secretary: Yes, of course.?

Sarah:, please. Thanks.

4. Vicky: I'm looking for a toothbrush, but I can't find any.

Assistant: Do you mean.....?

Vicky: Oh,.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Rewrite the sentences in brackets so that the noun is not repeated.
Use *one* or *ones*.

- These cups are nice. *Each one is hand-painted.* (Each cup is hand-painted.)

1. I need to fill in a form about my driving test, but..... (I haven't got a form.)
2. I've watched all these videos..... (I must get some new videos.)
3. These photos are good..... (Have you seen this photo?)
4. I need a dinner-jacket for the party, so..... (I've hired a dinner-jacket.)
5. Those socks are horrible..... (Can't you find any nice socks?)
6. This map isn't very good..... (The map in the car is better.)

 - Exercise 3:

Put in *one*, *some*, *it* or *them*.

► I don't know if I'll need any money. I'd better take *some*, I suppose.

1. If you need an umbrella, I can lend you.....
2. The radio isn't working. Rachel dropped..... on the floor.
3. I'm having a biscuit. Would you like....., too?
4. I had the matches a minute ago, and now I can't find.....
5. I haven't got any computer disks, but Emma has got.....

BAI 85:

EVERYONE, SOMETHING, etc. (Everyone, something,...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct words.

► Melanie: Did you say you found *something* in the street?

David: Yes, a diamond ring.

1. Nick: We all know the man is a thief, don't we?

Tom: Yes,..... knows, but..... dares to say so publicly.

2. Mark: Were there any calls for me?

Secretary: Yes,..... rang while you were out. It was rather strange. He refused to give his name, but he wants to discuss with you.

3. Melanie: Do you have any plans for the summer?

Tom: I'd like to go away..... if I can..... I know has invited me to his villa in Portugal, so I may go there.

4. Daniel: Has Matthew got a job yet?

Emma: No, but he's looked..... He's been to all the job agencies. He hates the idea of sitting around doing

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in *someone, anyone, something, anything, somewhere or anywhere*.

Rachel: Have you seen my calculator? I can't find it (►) *anywhere*.

Vicky: No, I haven't. Perhaps (1).....'s borrowed it.

Rachel: I haven't given (2)..... permission to borrow it. It must be (3)..... in this room.

Vicky: Things are in such a mess. It could be (4).....

Rachel: I know. I can never find (5)..... when I want it.

Vicky: We'll have to do (6)..... about this mess. We'd better tidy it up.

- Exercise 3:

Choose the correct form.

- ▶ We had to wait because someone had lost its/their ticket.
- 1. One of the policemen had injured his/their arm.
- 2. One of the guests had brought something wrapped in brown paper. She put it/them on the table.
- 3. No one likes/like going to the dentist, do he/they?
- 4. Everyone have/has to leave his/their bags outside.

- Exercise 4:

Rewrite the sentences using a phrase with *everyone*, *someone*, *something*, *nothing* and *somewhere* instead of the phrases in brackets.

- ▶ I'd like to buy (a nice thing). *I'd like to buy something nice.*
- ▶ Let's go (to another place), shall we? *Let's go somewhere else, shall we?*
- ▶ I'll try to remember (the name of everyone). *I'll try to remember everyone's name.*
- 1. I once met (a famous person).....
- 2. (A person's car) is blocking me in.....
- 3. I've got (a different thing) to tell you.....
- 4. We know (the opinions of all the people).....
- 5. (All the other people) except you are going.....
- 6. (No exciting things) ever happen here.....

TEST 16

Exercise 1:

A group of friends are going on a coach trip together. They're meeting at the coach stop. Complete the conversation. Put in a personal pronoun (*I, me, you, etc*) or a reflexive pronoun (*myself, yourself, etc*).

Polly: Where's Martin?

Rupert: He's ill. I spoke to (►) *him* yesterday. He was feeling a bit sorry for (1).....

Polly: Oh, poor Martin. And what about the twins?

Peter: (2)..... came with Janet and me. (3)..... gave (4)..... a lift.

Janet: Yes, the twins came with (5)..... in the car.

Tessa: I hope they're going to behave (6).....

Janet: Oh, I'm sure they will.

Rupert: (7)..... 'll be nice to have a day out. (8)..... say it's going to stay sunny.

Polly: I'm sure we'll all enjoy (9).....

Peter: Where's Anna?

Tessa: Oh, she's here somewhere. I spoke to (10)..... a moment ago. She was standing right next to (11).....

Exercise 2:

Decide which word is correct.

► I can't go to a party. I haven't got *anything* to wear.

a) anything b) everything c) something d) nothing

1. Take care, won't you, Anna? Look after.....

a) you b) your c) yours d) yourself

2. Yes..... would be lovely to see you again.

a) it b) that c) there d) you

3. If you want some apples, I'll get you..... at the shop.

a) any b) it c) one d) some

4. We've brought some food with..

- a) me b) ourselves c) us d) we

5. Who does this CD belong to? ~..... I've just bought it.

- a) I b) Me c) Mine d) Myself

6. The shop doesn't sell new books. It only sells old.....

- a) of them b) ones c) some d) them

7. Is..... a post office near here, please?

- a) here b) it c) there d) this

8. The two girls often wear..... clothes.

- a) each other b) each other's c) themselves d) themselves'

9. Have you had enough to eat, or would you like something.....?

- a) another b) else c) new d) other

- Exercise 3:

Use a pronoun instead of the words in brackets.

► Michelle is in hospital. *She* (Michelle) isn't very well.

1. I lost my watch, but it was only a cheap..... (watch).

2. I have to make tea for..... (all the people).

3. Tessa took a photo of..... (Tessa).

4. My flat is the..... (flat) at the top.

5. The phone rang..... (The caller) was Alex.

6. There was..... (a thing) worrying me.

7. I've got some sweets. Would you like..... (a sweet)?

8. (People in general) can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.

9. We decorated the whole house..... (without help).

- Exercise 4:

Complete the text. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

(►) It was on 20 September 1973. that Bobby Riggs met Billie Jean King on the tennis court. Of all the tennis matches until then, this was probably the (1)..... that attracted the most attention. Riggs had once been a champion, but at 55 he was getting rather old for top-class tennis. But he considered (2)..... a better player than any woman. In fact, he thought women should go home and find (3)..... useful to do in the kitchen. Billie Jean King, on the other hand, was a 29-year-

ld star of women's tennis and a feminist. Riggs thought that
 4)..... would be a good idea to play King. He was sure he could
 eat (5)..... King agreed to play. (6)..... was a lot of
 interest in the match, and more or less (7)..... in the country was
 looking forward to (8)..... On the night of the match,
 9)..... were over 30,000 people in the Houston Astrodome.
 When Riggs and King came face to face, with (10)..... other,
 they had 50 million people watching (11)..... on TV. The match
 didn't work out for Riggs, because Billie Jean King defeated
 12)..... , 6-4, 6-3, 6-3.

□ - Exercise 5:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

▶ ~~I didn't want the fridge, so I sold him.~~

I didn't want the fridge, so I sold it.

~~It's a train leaving in ten minutes.~~

~~I think someone are coming up the stairs.~~

~~Let's meet ourselves at eight o'clock, shall we?~~

~~We haven't got a camcorder, but we'd like a.~~

~~Let's do a different something today.~~

~~One is going to build a new motorway through here.~~

~~I'm afraid I haven't done something all day.~~

~~Everyone enjoyed themself at the barbecue.~~

~~If you're buying a loaf, get a nice fresh.~~

~~0. I've looked in all placed for my credit card.~~

~~1. The two friends still see themselves occasionally.~~

BÀI 86:

ADJECTIVES
(Tính từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and write a phrase with an adjective and noun.

Use these nouns: *building, car, cat, chairs, music, power, skirt, weather*



▶ a long skirt

▶ cold weather

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....
- 6.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Underline all the adjectives in this description of a hotel.

This comfortable hotel with its pleasant gardens is ideal for people who want a quiet holiday, yet it is only a short distance from the highly

popular attractions of the area. There are lovely views from every room. The atmosphere is very friendly, and the staff are always helpful. A holiday here is very good value for money. You can eat your meals at the hotel, where the food tastes marvellous. Or you can of course try some of the excellent local restaurants.

II - Exercise 3:

Look at the notes and write the song titles. Sometimes the adjective comes before the noun, and sometimes you need to use *is* or *are*.

► your sister / elder	<i>Your elder sister</i>
► this boy / alone	<i>his boy is alone</i>
... the world / asleep	.....
! my desire / chief	.....
! my heart / content	.....
! the thing to remember / main	.....
! the night / alive	.....
! secrets / inner	.....
! the girl for me / only	.....

BÀI 87:

THE ORDER OF ADJECTIVES (Vị trí của tính từ)

- Exercise 1:

Describe the pictures. Use these words: boots, building, car, seat, singer

► They're
leather.
They're big.



1 It's small.
It's white.



2 It's old.
It's attractive.



3 It's wooden.
It's for the
garden.
It's expensive.



4 He sings in
the opera.
He's Italian.
He's famous.



► *big leather boots*

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....

- Exercise 2:

Write a list of things to be sold at an auction.

► basin / sugar, antique, silver

n antique silver sugar basin

1. vase/glass, old, lovely
2. mirror/ wall, attractive
3. desk / modern, office
4. chairs / kitchen, red, metal
5. boat / model, splendid, old
6. stamps/ postage, valuable, Australian
7. table /small, coffee, wooden

-
-
-
-
-
-
-

 - Exercise 3:

Look at each advertisement and write the information in a single sentence.

► This game is new. It's for the family. And it's exciting.

This is an exciting new family game.

1. This computer is for business. It's Japanese. And it's powerful.
.....
2. This fire is electric. It's excellent. And it's small.
.....
3. This is a chocolate bar. It's new. And it's a big bar.
.....
4. This comedy is American. It's for television. And it's terrific.
.....
5. These doors are aluminium. They're for your garage. And they're stylish.
.....
6. These shoes are modern. They're for sports. And they're wonderful.
.....
7. This phone is a mobile. It's German. And it's very good.
.....

BAI 88:

THE OLD, THE RICH, etc. (The + tính từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write in the missing words. Use the and these adjectives: *homeless, hungry, old, sick, unemployed, young*



► Better education for *the young*

1. Food for
2. Homes for
3. Better hospitals for
4. Jobs for
5. Better pensions for

📖 - Exercise 2:

Rewrite the sentences using a phrase with the and an adjective instead of the underlined phrases.

► People who have lots of money have comfortable lives.

The rich have comfortable lives.

1. We live near a special school for people who can't hear.
.....
2. The old soldiers were holding a service for those who had died.
.....

3. The government should do more for people who do not have enough money.

4. I'm doing a course on caring for people who are mentally handicapped.

 - Exercise 3:

Complete these sentences from a newspaper. Use the adjectives in brackets. Put in e.g. *the hungry* or *the hungry people*.

► Rich nations can afford to feed *the hungry* (hungry).

► *The homeless people* (homeless) whose story appeared in this paper last week have now found a place to live.

1..... (sick) need to be looked after, so money must be spent on hospitals.

2. Some of..... (young) at the youth club here are running in a marathon.

3. Life must be hard for..... (unemployed) in our society today.

4. What is the government doing to help..... (poor)?

5. There was a fire at a nursing home in Charles Street, but none of..... (old) who live there were hurt.

6. (homeless) usually have great difficulty in getting a job.

7. There is a special television programme for..... (deaf) every Sunday morning.

BÀI 89:

INTERESTING and INTERESTED

(Interesting và interested)

📖 - Exercise 1:

What are they saying? Put in these words: depressing, exciting, exhausted, fascinating, interested



► This is a *depressing* place.

1. I'm absolutely.....
2. I'm..... in astronomy.
3. Chess is a..... game
4. This is really..... !

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Write the complete word in each space.

Vicky: That was an (►) *exciting* (excit...) film, wasn't it?

Rachel: Oh, do you think so? I'm (1)..... (surprise...) you liked it. I thought it was rather (2)..... (disappoint...).

Vicky: Well, I was (3)..... (puzzl...) once or twice. I didn't understand the whole story.

It was (4)..... (confus...) in places. But the end was good.

Rachel: I was (5)..... (bor...) most of the time.

I didn't find it very (6)..... (interest...).

 - Exercise 3:

Complete the conversations using a word ending in *ing* or *ed*.

- David: I'm surprised how warm it is for March.
Melanie: Yes, all this sunshine is quite *surprising*.
- Vicky: I'm not very fit. I was pretty tired after climbing the mountain.
Natasha: Yes, I think everyone felt *tired*.
1. Trevor: I think I need to relax.
Laura: Well, lying by the pool should be.....
2. Vicky: It was annoying to lose my ticket.
Emma: You looked really..... when you had to buy another one.
3. Sarah: The cabaret was amusing.
Mark: Claire was certainly..... She couldn't stop laughing.
4. Daniel: The museum was interesting, wasn't it?
Rachel: It was OK. I was quite..... in those old maps.
5. Matthew: I'm fascinated by these old photos.
Emma: I always find it..... to see what people looked like as children.
6. Rachel: Was it a big thrill meeting Tom Hanks?
Vicky: You bet. It was just about the most..... moment of my life.
7. Sarah: You look exhausted. You should go to bed.
Mark: Driving down from Scotland was pretty.....

BAI 90:

ADJECTIVE or ADVERB? (1)
(Tính từ hay phó từ) - Exercise 1:

This is part of a story about a spy called X. Put in adverbs formed from these adjectives: *bright, careful, fluent, immediate, patient, punctual, quiet, safe, secret, slow*

The journey took a long time because the train travelled so (►) *slowly*. It was hot, and the sun shone (1)..... from a clear sky. X could only wait (2) for the journey to end. When the train finally arrived, he had no time to spare, so he (3)..... took a taxi to the hotel. Y was on time. She arrived (4)..... at three. No one else knew about the meeting - it was important to meet (5)..... "I had a terrible journey." said Y. "But luckily the pilot managed to land (6)....." Her English was good, and she spoke very (7)..... X was listening (8)..... to every word. They were speaking very (9)..... in case the room was bugged.

 - Exercise 2:

Look at the information in brackets and put in the adverbs. Be careful with the spelling.

► (Emma's toothache was terrible.) Emma's tooth ached *terribly*.

1. (Henry was angry.) Henry shouted..... at the waiter.
2. (I'm happy sitting here.) I can sit here..... for hours.
3. (The switch is automatic.) The machine switches itself off.....
4. (The debate should be public.) We need to debate the matter.....
5. (Everyone was enthusiastic.) Everyone discussed the idea.....
6. (We should be reasonable.) Can't we discuss the problem.....?
7. (The building has to be sure.) Did you lock all the doors.....?

 - Exercise 3:

Decide what you need to say. End your sentence with an adverb ending in *ly*.

- Tell the police that you can't remember the accident. It isn't very clear in your mind.

I can't remember the accident very clearly

1. Tell your friend that United won the game. It was an easy win.
.....
2. Tell your boss that you've checked the figures. You've been careful.
.....
3. Tell your neighbour that his dog barked at you. It was very fierce.
.....
4. You are phoning your friend. Tell him about the rain where you are. It's quite heavy.
.....

- Exercise 4:

Vicky is telling Rachel about a dream she had. Choose the correct forms.

I had a (►) strange/strangely dream last night. I was in a garden. It was getting (1) dark/darkly, and it was (2) terrible/terribly cold. My head was aching (3) bad/badly. I was walking out of the garden when (4) sudden/suddenly I saw a man. He was sitting (5) quiet/quietly on a seat. He seemed very (6) unhappy/unhappily. He looked up and smiled (7) sad/sadly at me. I don't know why, but I felt (8) curious/curiously about him. I wanted to talk to him, but I couldn't think what to say. I just stood there (9) foolish/foolishly.

BÀI 91:

ADJECTIVE or ADVERB? (2)

(Tính từ hay phó từ)

- Exercise 1:

Decide if each underlined word is an adjective or an adverb.

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| ▶ That new building is rather <u>ugly</u> . | <i>adjective</i> |
| ▶ I'd like to arrive <u>early</u> if I can. | <i>adverb</i> |
| 1. I haven't seen you for a <u>long</u> time. | ..... |
| 2. Why are you wearing that <u>silly</u> hat? | ..... |
| 3. Very young children travel <u>free</u>. | ..... |
| 4. The temperature is quite <u>high</u> today. | ..... |
| 5. We <u>nearly</u> missed the bus this morning. | ..... |
| 6. Do you have to play that music so <u>loud</u>? | ..... |

- Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Decide if you need *ly* with the words in brackets.

Mark: How did you get on with Henry today?

Sarah: Oh, we had a nice lunch and some (▶) *lively* (live) conversation.
Henry was charming, as usual. He gave me a lift back to the office, but it was (1)..... (hard) worth risking our lives to save a few minutes. He (2)..... (near) killed us.

Mark: What do you mean?

Sarah: Well, we'd sat a bit too (3)..... (long) over our meal, and we were (4)..... (late) getting back to work. Henry drove very (5)..... (fast). I tried (6)..... (hard) to keep calm, but I was quite scared. We went (7)..... (wrong) and missed a left turn, and Henry got annoyed. Then a van came round the corner, and it was coming (8)..... (straight) at us. I don't know how we missed it.

Mark: Well, I'm glad you did. And next time you'd better take a taxi.

☐ - Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in *good, well (x2), bad, badly* and *ill*.

Rachel: How did you and Daniel get on in your tennis match?

Matthew: We lost. I'm afraid we didn't play very (►) well. Daniel made some (1)..... mistakes. It wasn't a very (2)..... day for us. We played really (3)

Andrew: I heard Daniel's in bed at the moment because he isn't very (4).....

Matthew: Yes, I'm afraid he's been (5)..... for several days, but he's better now.

☐ - Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation: Choose the correct form.

Daniel: Is it true you saw a ghost last night?

Vicky: Yes, I did. I went to bed (►) late/late, and I was sleeping (1) bad/badly. I suddenly woke up in the middle of the night. I went to the window and saw the ghost walking across the lawn.

Daniel: Was it a man or a woman?

Vicky: A woman in a white dress. I had a (2) good/well view from the window, but she walked very (3) fast/fastly. She wasn't there very (4) long/longly. I'd (5) hard/hardly caught sight of her before she'd gone. I (6) near/nearly missed her.

Daniel: You don't think you've been working too (7) hard/hardly? You've been looking a bit pale (8) late/late.

Vicky: I saw her, I tell you.

Daniel: It isn't very (9) like/likely that ghosts actually exist, you know. I expect you were imagining it.

TEST 17

📖 - Exercise 1:

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- We walked slow/slowly back to the hotel.
1. We could walk free/freely around the aircraft during the flight.
 2. The young/The young man with dark hair is my sister's boyfriend.
 3. I'm getting quite hungry/hungrily.
 4. The man looked thoughtful/thoughtfully around the room.
 5. Have I filled this form in right/rightly?
 6. I think Egypt is a fascinated/fascinating country.
 7. The two sisters do alike/similar jobs.
 8. I'm pleased the plan worked so good/goodly/well.
 9. She invented a new kind of wheelchair for the disabled/the disabled people.
 10. I'm very confused/confusing about what to do.
 11. They performed the experiment scientifically/scientificly.
 12. The hostages must be very afraid/frightened people.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

- a / bought / coat / I / new / red

I bought a new red coat.

1. a / is / nice / place / this
-

2. biscuit / can't / find / I / large / the / tin
-

3. a / behaved / in / silly / Tessa / way
-

4. coffee / cold / getting / is / your
-

5. a / house / in / live / lovely / old / stone / they
-

6. for / hospital / ill / is / mentally / the / this

.....

- Exercise 3:

Write the words in brackets and add *ly*, *ing* or *ed* only if you need to.

Janet: Is this the (►) *new* (new...) car you've just bought?

Nigel: That's right. Well, it's second-hand of course.

Janet: It's (►) *exciting* (excit...) buying a car, isn't it?

Nigel: Well, it was a bit of a problem actually because I didn't have much money to spend. But I managed to find one that wasn't very (1)..... (expensive...).

Janet: It looks very (2)..... (nice...), I must say.

Nigel: It's ten years old, so I was (3)..... (surpris...) what good condition it's in. The man I bought it from is over eighty, and he always drove it very (4)..... (careful...), he said. He never took it out if it was raining, which I find (5)..... (amus...).

Janet: I think (6)..... (elder...) people look after their cars better than young people.

Nigel: He was a (7)..... (friend...) old chap. He even gave me all these maps (8)..... (free...).

- Exercise 4:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

► Jonathan was stupid. (behaved)

Jonathan behaved stupidly.

1. The drink had a strange taste. (tasted)

.....

2. Obviously, sick people need to be looked after. (the)

.....

3. The dog slept. (asleep)

.....

4. The young woman was polite. (spoke)

.....

5. The train was late. (arrived)

.....

5. The film's ending is dramatic. (ends)

7. Polly gave an angry shout. (shouted)

3. Billiards is a game for indoors. (indoor)

9. The clown amused people. (amusing)

10. There was almost no time left. (any)

- Exercise 5:

Some of these sentences are correct, but most have a mistake. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the sentence out and write it correctly.

► Your friend looked rather ill.

► It was a steel long pipe.

✓
It was a long steel pipe.

1. I tasted the soup careful.

2. It's a beautiful old English church.

3. Are they asleep children?

4. It's a school for the deaf people.

5. It's a leather new nice jacket.

6. The riches are very lucky.

7. You handled the situation well.

8. He used a green paper thick towel.

9. Our future lies with the young.

10. The course I started was bored.

11. I often talk to the two old next door.

12. The smoke rose highly into the air.

13. It feels warm in here.

14. We felt disappointing when we lost.

15. Everyone seemed very nervously.

16. Tessa drives too fastly.

17. This scenery is really depressing.

BÀI 92:

COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE FORMS

(So sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the sentences. Use these adjectives: *beautiful*, *expensive*, *high*, *interesting*, *tall*



- ▶ The giraffe *is taller* than the man.
- ▶ The CD *is more expensive* than the cassette.
- 1. Detective stories..... than algebra.
- 2. The top of the mountain..... than the clouds.
- 3. The acrobat..... than the clown.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Tom is a United fan. He never stops talking about them. Put in the superlative form of the adjectives.

- ▶ Everyone's heard of United. They're the *most famous* (famous) team in the world.
- ▶ They've got a long history. They're the *oldest* (old) club in England.
- 1. They've got lots of money. They're the..... (rich) club in the country.
- 2. Their stadium is new. It's the..... (modern) stadium in Europe.

3. United are wonderful. They're the..... (great) club in the world.
4. And what a team! It's the..... (exciting) team ever.
5. They've got lots of fans. They're the..... (popular) team in the country.
6. United have won everything. They're the..... (successful) team ever.
7. They're good to watch. They play the..... (attractive) football.
8. United fans are happy. We're the..... (happy) people in the world.

- Exercise 3:

Complete the advertisements with the comparative form of the adjective.

- ▶ Use Get-It-Clean and you'll get your floors *cleaner*.
- ▶ Elegant Wallpapers simply look *more elegant*.
 1. Watch a Happy Video and you'll feel.....
 2. Wear a pair of Fast Shoes and you'll be a..... runner.
 3. Helpful Cookbooks are a..... guide to cooking.
 4. Wash your hair with Lovely Shampoo for..... hair.
 5. Try a Big-Big Burger and you'll have a..... meal.
 6. Restful Beds give you a..... night.
 7. Wear Modern Fashions for a..... look.

- Exercise 4:

Put in the comparative form of these adverbs: *carefully, early, easily, high, long, loud, often, smartly*

- ▶ I was too nervous to go *higher* than halfway up the tower.
- ▶ We could have found the place *more easily* with a map.
- 1. Do you have to wear those old jeans Mike? Can't you dress.....?
- 2. You needn't go yet. You can stay a bit.....
- 3. There are lots of break-ins. They happen..... nowadays.
- 4. If you do it again, you won't make so many mistakes.
- 5. The film starts at eight, but we should get to the cinema a few minutes.....
- 6. We can't hear. Could you speak a bit.....?

Exercise 5:

Matthew and Emma are walking in the country. Put in *further*, *furthest*, *better*, *best*, *worse* and *worst*.

Emma: I'm not used to country walks. How much (►) *further* is it?

Matthew: Not far. And it gets better. We've done the (1)..... part. Look, the path gets easier. It goes downhill from here. I hope you're feeling (2)..... now, Emma.

Emma: I feel dreadful, actually, (3)..... than before.

Matthew: Oh, dear. Do you want to have a rest?

Emma: No, the (4)..... thing would be to get home as soon as we can. I'm not very fit, you know. This is the (5)..... I've walked for a long time.

Exercise 6:

Put in *more*, *most*, *less* (x2) and *least*.

Laura: Our new car is smaller, so it uses (►) *less* petrol. They tested some small cars, and this one costs the (1)..... to run of all the cars in the test. It's very economical, so Trevor likes it. He wants to spend (2)..... on motoring.

Harriet: Can you get three people in the back?

Laura: Not very easily. We had (3)..... room in our old car. (4)..... cars take five people, but not this one.

Exercise 7:

Write the correct forms.

► You're the ~~luckiest~~ person I know.

luckiest

► The situation is getting ~~difficult~~.

more difficult

1. I was ~~happier~~ in my old job.

.....

2. I've got the ~~most small~~ office.

.....

3. This photo is the ~~goodest~~.

.....

4. Last week's meeting was ~~more short~~.

.....

5. Money is the ~~importantest~~ thing.

.....

6. Is Rachel ~~elder~~ than Vicky?

.....

7. This game is ~~excitinger~~ than the last one.

.....

8. Of all the students, Andrew does the ~~more work~~.

.....

9. This month has been ~~weter~~ than last month.

.....

10. The prices are ~~more low~~ here.

.....

11. I feel ~~more bad~~ than I did yesterday.

.....

BÀI 93:

COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE PATTERNS (1)

(Mẫu so sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất)

- Exercise 1:

Comment on these situations. Write sentences with a comparative and *than*. Use these adjectives: *big, expensive, long, old, popular, strong, tall*

- The film lasts two and a half hours, but the videotape is only two hours long.

The film is longer than the videotape.

- The water-colour is £97, and the oil-painting is £105.

The oil-painting is more expensive than the water-colour.

1. The church was built in 1878 and the library in 1925.

2. Daniel can lift 90 kilos, but Matthew can lift 120 kilos.

3. Mike is 1.7 metres tall, but Harriet is 1.8 metres.

4. Andrew hasn't many friends. Claire has lots of friends.

5. Mark's car has room for five people, but Sarah's has room for only four.

- Exercise 2:

Write sentences from the notes. Use the superlative form of the adjective.

- Melanie / kind person / I know

Melanie is the kindest person I know.

1. Friday / busy day / week of the week.

2. the Metropole / nice hotel / town

3. this watch / one / cheap / you can buy

4. this Beatles album / good / they ever made

5. Alan / successful salesman / company

- Exercise 3:

Use the notes and add sentences with *isn't as... as*.

► a car / a motor bike / expensive

Why don't you buy a motor bike? *A motor bike isn't as expensive as a car.*

1. metal/plastic / strong

I don't like these plastic screws.

2. the armchair / the stool / comfortable

Oh, don't sit there.

3. surfing / swimming / exciting

I prefer surfing to swimming.

4. the post / e-mail / quick

A letter will take two days.

- Exercise 4:

Choose the correct pronoun.

Tom: Why is Luke in our basketball team and not me? Aren't I as good as

(►) he/him? Is he taller than (1) I'm/me? Is he a better player than

(2) I am/me am?

Nick: I don't know. I can't understand why I'm in the team. You and Luke are both better than (3) I/me

Tom: Carl's in the team too, but I've scored a lot more points than (4) he has/him has.

BÀI 94:

COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE PATTERNS (2)

(Mẫu so sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất)

 - Exercise 1:

Complete the sentences. Use *less* with these words: *attractive, busy, convenient, nervous, optimistic, painful, seriously*

► Laura once hated flying, but now she feels *less nervous* about it.

- David says his leg really hurt at first, but now it's.....
- Mark and Sarah normally have lots to do, but they're.....this week.
- Rita's old flat was near the shops. Her new place is..... for shopping.
- Claire used to think Henry was very handsome, but now she finds him.....
- Matthew is always exercising. Maybe he should take his fitness.....
- With United's best player injured, Tom feels..... about their chances.

 - Exercise 2:

Decide what to say. Use a phrase like *a bit better* or *a lot colder*.

► You were feeling unwell earlier. Say that you feel better now. A bit, anyway.
I feel a bit better now.

- Mention that yesterday was colder than today. A lot colder, in fact.
.....
- Say that your coat is longer than is fashionable. A bit, anyway.
.....
- You left work earlier than usual this afternoon. Slightly, anyway. Tell your friend.
.....
- Say that the shop is more expensive than the supermarket. Much more.
.....

5. Ask if the new machine is reliable - any more so than the old one.
-

 - Exercise 3:

Vicky works very hard at her studies, but she's worried that she's making no progress. Complete her sentences.

- ▶ This subject gets *harder and harder* (hard) all the time.
- ▶ I'm just getting *more and more confused* (confused).
- 1. It's becoming..... (difficult) for me to keep up.
- 2. The textbook just gets..... (complicated).
- 3. I spend..... (more) time on my work.
- 4. My list of things to do gets..... (long).
- 5. My problems are just getting..... (bad).

 - Exercise 4:

Complete each sentence using the information in brackets.

- ▶ (The rent is high.) The bigger a flat is, *the higher the rent is*.
- ▶ (You learn quickly.) The younger you are, *the more quickly you learn*.
- 1. (The roads are quiet.) The earlier you leave,.....
- 2. (The choice is wide.) The bigger a supermarket is,.....
- 3. (I get confused.) The more I try to work this out,.....
- 4. (You can speak fluently.) The more you practise,.....
- 5. (The beaches get crowded.) The better the weather is,.....

TEST 18

- Exercise 1:

Write the comparative form of the words in the blankets:

- ▶ They've made these chocolate bars *smaller* (small)
 - ▶ Sport is *more interesting* (interesting) than politics
1. Can't you think of anything.....(intelligent) to say?
 2. Well, the place books.....(clean) now.
 3. Janet looks.....(thin) than she did.
 4. You need to draw it.....(carefully).
 5. The weather is getting.....(bad).
 6. The programme will be shown at a.....(late) date.
 7. I can't stay.....(long) than half an hour.
 8. A mobile phone would be a.....(useful) present.
 9. I'll try to finish the job.....(soon).
 10. It was.....(busy) than usual in town today.
 11. I'll be even.....(annoyed) if you do that again.
 12. Since the break – in I feel.....(nervous).

- Exercise 2:

Write the superlative form of the words in brackets:

- ▶ It's the *shortest* (short) day of the year.
 - ▶ It's the *most beautiful* (beautiful) building in the world.
1. That was the.....(funny) film I've ever seen.
 2. It was the.....(horrible) feeling I've ever had.
 3. Have you read her.....(recent) book?
 4. It's the.....(large) company in the country.
 5. It was the.....(boring) speech I've ever heard.
 6. You've got the.....(far) to travel.
 7. That's the.....(helpful) idea so far.

8. The factory uses the.....(modern) production methods.
9. This is the.....(early) I've ever got up.
10. It was the.....(sad) day of my life.

- Exercise 3:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| ➤ I've got the least powerful computer in the world. | ✓ |
| ➤ London is more bigger than Birmingham. | more |
| 1. Silver isn't as expensive as gold. | ..... |
| 2. Indian food is the nicer than Chinese, I think. | ..... |
| 3. The telephone is one of the most useful inventions ever. | ..... |
| 4. I feel a much better now, thank you. | ..... |
| 5. The longer you wait, so the harder it'll be. | ..... |
| 6. The piano is heavier than the sofa. | ..... |
| 7. This is the most quickest way to the hotel. | ..... |
| 8. You're taller than he is. | ..... |
| 9. Who is the cleverest student in of the class? | ..... |
| 10. The weather is getting hotter and more hotter. | ..... |

- Exercise 4:

Read this part of Tessa's letter to her friend Angela about her new job. Then look at the answers after the letter and write the correct answer in each space.

My new job is great. I like it (►) *much* better than my old one. The people here are (1).....than I expected. Luckily my new boss isn't as rude (2).....my old boss, Mrs. Crossley, was. I hated her. She was the (3).....friendly person I've ever met. Everyone here is older (4)..... . In fact I'm the youngest person (5).....the office. But I don't mind.

The good thing about the job is that I get a (6).....more money, although not much more than I did before. The bad thing is that the journey isn't (7).....simple as it was my old job, where the bus took me straight there. Now I have to change buses. But I'm allowed to start

work early. The earlier I leave home, (8).....the journey is because the buses aren't so crowded.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| ► a) more | b) most | c) much | d) very |
| 1. a) more nice | b) most nice | c) nicer | d) nicest |
| 2. a) as | b) so | c) than | d) that |
| 3. a) least | b) less | c) less and less | d) so |
| 4. a) as I | b) as me | c) than I | d) than me |
| 5. a) from | b) in | c) of | d) out of |
| 5. a) bit | b) less | c) lot | d) much |
| 7. a) as | b) less | c) more | d) same |
| 3. a) more easier | b) more easy | c) the easier | d) the easy |

- Exercise 5:

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- This train is more convenient than all the others. (most)

This train *is the most convenient*.

1. The living room isn't as big as the kitchen. (bigger)

The kitchen.....

2. I'm not as fit as you. (am)

You're.....

3. The table and the desk are the same size. (big)

The table.....the desk.

4. Prices just get higher all the time. (and)

Prices.....

5. The dress is cheaper than the skirt. (expensive)

The skirt.....the dress.

6. This crossword is the easiest. (difficult)

This crossword.....

7. Their excitement was increasing all the time. (excited)

They were getting.....

8. I've never read a more romantic story. (most)

It's the.....read.

BÀI 95:

ADVERBS and WORD ORDER

(Trạng từ và vị trí của trạng từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Read each sentence and write down the word which is an adverb

- I'm just finishing an interesting article in this magazine. *just*
1. We have to leave our dirty shoes outside.
 2. Perhaps you have to type a password into the computer.
 3. Someone always leaves this door open.
 4. Obviously we aren't going to go for a walk in the rain.
 5. The car rolled silently down the hill.
 6. Your friend Andrew works hard, doesn't he?

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read this true story. Some adverbs are underlined. Say if their position is front, mid or end.

Once a man called Alvin decided to rob a bank in Montgomery, Alabama. Alvin's parents had often told him that good manners were important. So Alvin went to the bank and stood in line. He waited patiently. Soon it was his turn. He dramatically pulled out a gun and threatened the cashier. She politely told him that he was in the wrong line and should go to another counter. Alvin immediately went to the correct place and stood in line again. Suddenly the police rushed in and arrested him. Alvin was amazed. They'd caught him before he'd even done the robbery. The moral of the story is that you shouldn't always do what your parents tell you.

ADVERB	POSITION	ADVERB	POSITION
► once	<i>front</i>	6. immediately	.....
1. often		7. again	.....
2. patiently		8. suddenly	.....
3. soon		9. even	.....
4. dramatically		10. always	.....
5. politely			

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation using the words in brackets. Put the adverbs in the best place.

► Emma: Did you know the man who tried to steal your bag?
(certainly/recognize/would)

Vicky: No, but I *would certainly recognize* him again

1. David: That was a goal, wasn't it? (clearly/crossed)

Tom: Yes, the ball.....the line.

2. Mark: The weather is a lot better today. (probably/rain/will)

Sarah: It said on the radio it.....later.

3. Tom: How do we get to Mike's place? (didn't/fully/understand)

Nicky: I don't know. I.....the directions.

4. Harriet: It's quite here today, isn't it? (usually/are)

Laura: Yes, the neighbours.....out on a Sunday.

5. Emma: Have you been to this place before? (it/occasionally/visited)

Mathew: Yes, I.....as a child.

6. Alan: Did the computers crash this morning? (soon/were/working)

Mark: Yes, but they.....again.

7. Melanie: Your friend's late, Vicky. (forgotten/has/obviously)

Vicky: Rachel.....that we arranged to go out.

- Exercise 4:

Look at what people are saying and write the information in one sentence. Put the verb or adverbial phrase in mid or end position. Choose the best position.

► Vicky: I lose my way in London. It always happens.

Vicky always loses her way in London.

► Laura: The birds wake me up. It happens every morning.

The birds wake Laura up every morning.

1. David: It rains when I'm on holiday. Well, usually.

.....

2. Rita: My friend visits me. She comes most weekends.

.....

3. Mark: I get a pay rise. I get one every year.

.....

4. Rachel: I don't check my work. I never do that.

.....

- Exercise 5:

Put the words in the right order and write the statements. Sometime there is more than one possible order.

► Cleaned/everyday/is/the office

The office is cleaned everyday.

1. always/ I've/known/ your secret

.....

2. afford/can't/certainly/a new car/we

.....

3. didn't/far/the tourists/walk.....

.....

4. carefully/cut/the paper/Tom.....

.....

5. also/can/Natasha/play/the violin

.....

6. I/most days/read/the newspaper

.....

- Exercise 6:

Complete these sentences from a newspaper. Put the words and phrases in the best order.

► The Queen has visited the show *regularly since 1985*. (regularly/ since 1985).

1. The President died.....(at his home/peacefully).

2. The protesters marched.....(through the streets/yesterday).

3. The Prime Minister went.....(last year/ to Greece).

4. Henry likes Rome. He spent a week.....(in June/ there)

- Exercise 7:

Read the postcard from Olivia to her friend Kristy and write the sentences. Put the adverbs in the best place.

►) Thank you for having us (last weekend). (1) We had a lovely time in the country). (2) We arrived home at about eight (safely). (3) You must come and visit us (before too long). (4) It's nice to see you and only (always). (5) You'll be able to come in the new year (maybe).
◊) We'll see you (sometime).

· *Thank you for having us last weekend.*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

BAI 96:

YET, STILL and ALREADY

(Yet, still và already)

- Exercise 1:

Put *yet*, *still* or *already*

- Martin: I know it isn't lunch-time *yet*, but I'm really hungry.
 Vicky: It's only ten. And you've *already* had two coffees since breakfast.
1. Sarah: You've got this library book, and it was due back eleven ago.
 Laura: Well, I haven't finished it.....
2. Trevor: Jim is a very slow eater, isn't he? He's..... having his soup.
 Nick: And we've.....started our pudding.
3. David: Has the postman been.....? I'm expecting a letter from the bank.
 Alice: Yes, he has, but that letter.....hasn't arrived.

- Exercise 2:

Put the word in brackets into one of the sentences.

- I've bought some CDs. I haven't played them. (yet)
I haven't played them yet.
- This calculator works. I've had it for ages. (still)
This calculator still works.
1. I owe Anna £30. I can't ask her for more. (already)

2. We've spent all our money. And we're only halfway through our holiday. (already)

3. I've cleaned this window. But it looks dirty. (still)

4. Our friend took some photos. We haven't seen them. (yet)

.....

5. I can't understand the rules. I know you explained them to me. (still)

.....

- Exercise 3:

Two people are talking about the place they live in. Write the replies using *still* or *not.....any more*

Old man:	Young man:
▶ There was a church.	- Well, <i>there is still a church</i>
▶ You could see fields.	- <i>You can't see them any more.</i>
	Now it's just houses
1. Children played there.	- Not now.....
2. Boats came along the river.	- Oh,.....Look at them.
3. The view was beautiful.	- Well,.....It's awful.
4. It was our home.	- And.....

- Exercise 4:

Put in *already*, *anymore*, *no longer*, *still* and *yet*

▶ It's *still* raining, look. How much longer can it go out?

1. The railway closed down years ago, so there's.....a railway station here.
2. They want to build a new hotel here, but they haven't got permission.....
3. Rita isn't going out with Nick. She told him she didn't want to see him.....
4. Those people moved here only three months ago, and they're.....leaving.

BÀI 97:

ADVERBS OF DEGREE, e.g. VERY, QUITE
(Trạng từ chỉ mức độ: very, quite, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write sentences using one of the phases in brackets

► (quite hungry or very hungry?) *He's quite hungry.*

1. (a bit busy or very busy?).....
2. (a bit thirsty or very thirsty?).....
3. (quite strong or very strong?).....
4. (fairly happy or extremely happy?).....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in *very*, *quite* or *a bit*► The bus service is all right. The buses are *quite* frequent.

1. I couldn't sleep because of the awful noise. The disco wasnoisy.
2. The weather was OK – at least it didn't rain. It wasgood.
3. The train was almost on time. It was just.....late.
4. Someone paid a great deal of money for the house. It wasexpensive.
5. There were some very small traces of mud on the boots. They weredirty.
6. There was a medium amount of traffic on the road. It wasbusy.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Put the adverbs in the right place. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

- These books are old (very).
 ► I hate travelling by air (really).

These books are very old.
I really hate travelling by air.

1. That radio is loud. (a bit).
2. I like my new job (quite).
3. Why don't you slow down (a little)?
4. The rain spoilt our day (completely).
5. We did the job quickly (fairly).
6. I feel better now (a lot).
7. We enjoyed the concert (very much).
8. My arms ached (terribly).

.....

📖 - Exercise 4:

Complete the advertisement for holiday apartments by choosing the correct words.

Why not take this opportunity to buy a wonderful Interlux Timeshare apartment in San Manila? These are (►) a-bit/rather/ really luxurious apartments set in this (1) absolutely/slightly magnificent seaside resort, a (2) fairly/really beautiful and unspoilt place, which you'll like (3) much/very/very much. The apartments are (4) extremely/prettv/quite good value. And we are a company with a (5) fairly/quite/very good reputation. This is a (6) bit/slightly/totally safe way of investing your money. But hurry! People are buying up the apartments (7) a lot/very/very much quickly.

BAI 98:

QUITE and RATHER (Quite và rather)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Which word do we stress, *quite* or the adjective? Underline the stressed word.

- ▶ These pens are quite good but not as good as the ones I usually buy.
- ▶ This book is quite exciting. I can't put it down.
 1. These fashions are quite new but not the very latest thing.
 2. It's quite late. We'd better be going.
 3. The sums are quite easy. I can do them in my head.
 4. The music was quite good, but I wasn't really impressed.
 5. The sun is quite bright. You'll need your sunglasses.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in these adjectives: *better, busy, nice, noisy, popular*. Use *quite* or *rather* with each adjective. Sometimes either is possible.

Mark: I didn't like that meal very much. Sarah: The soup was (▶) *quite nice* though, wasn't it?

Mark: The food was (1)..... the last time we came.

Sarah: It's (2)..... in here, isn't it? Everyone seems to be shouting.

Mark: I wasn't expecting the place to be so full. It's (3)..... for a Monday evening.

Sarah: This restaurant is (4)....., you know.

📖 - Exercise 3:

Add a sentence expressing the idea in brackets. Use *quite* or *rather* in your sentence. Sometimes either is possible.

- ▶ (It's pleasant by the river.)
Let's walk along by the river. *It's quite pleasant there.*
- ▶ (You think Nick is aggressive.)

I don't like Nick much. *I think he's rather aggressive.*

(Changing trains twice is complicated.)

We have to change trains twice.

1. (Your car is big.)

I can give you all a lift.

1. (The show went on longer than you expected.)

It was a good show, but.

1. (You made your decision quickly.)

It wasn't a difficult decision.

- Exercise 4:

Does *quite* mean 'fairly' or 'completely'?

► Try one of these sweets. I think they're quite nice. = *fairly nice*

► The driver walked away unhurt. It was quite amazing. = *completely amazing*

1. I couldn't agree to the idea. It was quite ridiculous. =

2. I need some help with this crossword. It's quite difficult. =

3. That isn't the same thing at all. It's quite different. =

4. I wasn't expecting to get a postcard. I was quite surprised. =

5. I bought this guidebook. It looks quite useful. =

6. Are you sure you want the job? ~ Yes, I'm quite certain. =

BÀI 99:

TOO and ENOUGH
(Too và enough)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and write sentences with *too* and *enough*.
Use these nouns and adjectives: big, gate, long, low, plane, sweater,
ruler, warm, water, wide



- ▶ The sweater is too big.
- ▶ The ruler isn't long enough.

1.
2.
3.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Look at what people are saying and complete the sentences. Use *too*, *too many*, *too much* or *enough* with these words: clearly, complicated, difficult, expensive, food, hastily, mistakes, ram, sweet, traffic

- ▶ You should have stopped to think first. You acted *too hastily*.
- ▶ This quiz is rather easy. The questions aren't *difficult enough*.

1. Can I have some more sugar in my coffee, please? It isn't.....
2. I can't afford a new stereo. It would be
3. There's a water shortage. There just hasn't been
4. I can't read your writing. You don't write

5. Try to be more careful, please. You're making.....
5. The roads are very crowded. There's simply
7. I can't understand these instructions. They're
3. Thousands of people are starving because they can't get

- Exercise 3:

Comment on the situations. Use *too* or *enough* and a phrase with *for* or a *to-infinitive*.

- A taxi would have been best. But you didn't have the money.

I didn't have enough money for a taxi.

- Sarah can't take a day off. She's very busy.

Sarah is too busy to take a day off.

1. A picnic would be nice. But it's wet.

.....

2. All your guests will need chairs. But you haven't got very many.

.....

3. You couldn't carry the equipment. You had such a lot.

.....

4. Natasha wants to be a professional musician. You think she's very good.

.....

TEST 19

 - Exercise 1:

Put each word in brackets into the sentence.

► Anna arrives for work. (late)

Anna arrives late for work.

1. I like old cowboy films. (quite)

2. Have you finished this magazine? (yet)

3. This coat is big. (too)

4. Have the children had their tea? (already)

5. You don't look ill. (certainly)

6. We don't go out. (much)

7. I think everyone works hard. (fairly)

8. I don't know the date of the meeting. (still)

9. The others are getting ready. (just)

10. I have to go to work. (on Saturdays)

 - Exercise 2:

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

► I / love / really / these trousers

I really love these trousers.

1. is / rather / silly / this game

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
| 3. a) more | b) quite | c) rather | d) some |
| 4. a) enough | b) plenty | c) right | d) several |
| 5. a) big | b) lot | c) many | d) much |
| 6. a) for | b) of | c) that | d) to |
| 7. a) any | b) no | c) now | d) some |
| 8. a) any | b) never | c) no | d) not |
| 9. a) bit | b) piece | c) quite | d) slightly |
| 10. a) already | b) yet | c) soon | d) before very long |

📖 - Exercise 4:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

- ~~My friend calls always for me.~~ —
My friend always calls for me.

1. ~~I didn't last night sleep very well~~
.....

2. ~~I think I need to rest little~~
.....

3. ~~I don't work for the company longer.~~
.....

4. ~~The article is fair interesting.~~
.....

5. ~~Tessa locked carefully the door.~~
.....

6. ~~You aren't enough tall to play basketball.~~
.....

7. ~~We went yesterday to town.~~
.....

8. ~~I like this music much.~~
.....

📖 - Exercise 5:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- It's probable that the strike will be over soon. (probably)
The strike will probably be over soon.

-
1. We often go to the cinema. (a lot)
.....
 2. Adrian wears jeans all the time. (always)
.....
 3. These shoes are too small. (big)
.....
 4. I don't live in Birmingham any more. (no)
.....
 5. Polly spent more money than she should have done in the sales. (too)
.....

BÀI 100:

PREPOSITION OF PLACE
(Giới từ chỉ địa điểm)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in the prepositions. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.



► Sarah is getting *out of* the taxi.



1. David is going.....
the ladder.



2. The furniture is.....
the van.



3. My friend lives in a
flat..... a shop.



4. The boss is coming.....
the corridor.



5. There's a garage.....
the house.



6. We walked..... the
lake.



7. There's a statue.....the
museum.



8. Tom and Nick are
walking..... the stadium.

- Exercise 2:

Complete the conversations. Choose the correct preposition.

1. Vicky: I felt really afraid when I was walking home from/off the club.
All the time I could hear someone behind/in front of me, but I
didn't dare turn round.

Rachel: I expect you were imagining it.

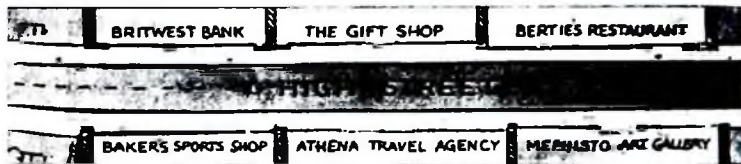
Vicky: No, I wasn't. I saw him after I'd come in across/through the gate.
He was wearing a long black coat that came down well below/under his knees.

2. Daniel: You know Adam, don't you? He's very strange. He walked right along/past me yesterday was coming among/down the stairs, but he didn't say hello.

Matthew: The other day he was sitting beside/opposite me at lunch, so I couldn't help looking at I said hello, but he didn't speak.

- Exercise 3:

Look at the plan and explain where things are. Use *between*, *next to* or *opposite*.



► The bank is *next to* the gift shop.

1. The sports shop is..... the bank.
2. The travel agency is..... the sports shop and the art gallery.
3. The restaurant is..... the art gallery.
4. The gift shop is..... the bank and the restaurant.
5. The art gallery is..... the travel agency.

- Exercise 4:

Where did the fly go? Put in these prepositions: *around*, *into*, *on*, *out of*, *through*, *under*, *up*



► The fly came in *through* the door.

1. It flew..... the chair.
2. It crawled..... the chair leg.
3. It stopped..... the desk for a moment.
4. It went..... the telephone.
5. It flew..... the drawer.
6. It went..... the window.

- Exercise 5:

Put in the correct preposition.

► Rachel was lying *on* the grass reading a book.

1. It's my holiday next week. I'm going..... Spain.
2. There was a big crowd..... the shop waiting for it to open.
3. That man is an idiot. He pushed me..... the swimming-pool.
4. I went..... the chemist's just now, but I didn't notice if it was open.
5. David hurt himself. He fell..... his bike.
6. There's a café..... top of the mountain. You can have a coffee there before you go down.
7. The sheep got out..... a hole in the fence.
8. Pompeii is quite..... Sorrento. It's only a short train ride.
9. There's such a crowd. You won't find your friend..... all these people.

BÀI 101:

IN, ON and AT (place)
(In, on và at- chỉ địa điểm)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and write the sentences. Use *in*, *on* or *at* and these words: *the bath*, *the disco*, *the lights*, *the roof*, *the table*



► *He's on the table.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete each sentence. Use *in* or *at* and these words:
the petrol station, *the restaurant*, *the stadium*, *the station*, *the theatre*,
the zoo

► There's a huge crowd *in the stadium* waiting for the Games to start.

1. Sarah's just rung. She's..... getting some petrol.
2. The children like wild animals. They'd love to spend an afternoon.....
3. It was so hot that I didn't really enjoy the play
4. We're quite a large group. There may not be enough room.
for all of us to sit together.
5. I saw Daniel while I was..... waiting for a train

 - Exercise 3:

Put in the preposition *in, on or at*.

► We spent the whole holiday *on* the beach.

1. I read about the pop festival..... a magazine.
2. My parents' flat is..... the twenty-first floor.
3. Melanie was holding a small bird..... her hands.
4. I'll meet you..... the airport.
5. Natasha now lives..... 32 The Avenue.
6. I was standing..... the counter in the baker's shop, waiting to be served.
7. London is..... the Thames.
8. There weren't many books..... the shelves.
9. The passengers had to stand..... a queue.
10. The woman sitting next to me left the train Chesterfield.

BÀI 102:

IN, ON and AT (time)
(In, on và at- chỉ thời gian)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Read the information about John F. Kennedy and then answer the questions. Begin each answer with *in, on* or *at*.

John F. Kennedy was born into a famous American family. His date of birth was 29 May 1917. The year 1961 saw him become the 35th President of the US. Kennedy was killed as he drove in an open car through the streets of Dallas, Texas. Friday, 22 November 1963 was a sad day for America. It was 12.30 when a gunman opened fire and shot the President dead.

► When was John F. Kennedy born? *On 29 May 1917.*

1. When did he become President?

2. When was he killed?

3. What time was he shot?

📖 - Exercise 2:

Mark is arranging a business meeting. Decide if you need *in, on* or *at*. If you do not need a preposition, put a cross (×).

Mark: I'm sorry I was out when you called (►) × yesterday afternoon.
 Alice: Look, I'm free (►) *on* the fifteenth of March. Can we meet then?

Alice: I'm pretty busy (1)..... next week, I'm afraid. I can't see you (2)..... Friday.

Mark: I'd like to have a meeting (3)..... this month if possible.
 I'll be very busy (4)..... April.

Alice: I'm going away (5)..... Easter, so how about the week after?

Shall we meet (6)..... the twenty-seventh? That's a Wednesday.

Mark: I've got an appointment (7)..... the morning but nothing (8)..... the afternoon. Let's meet (9).....
 Wednesday afternoon (10)..... half past two.

- Exercise 3:

Put in the right phrase: *in time* or *on time*.

- ▶ If the plane is late, we won't get to Paris *in time* for our connecting flight.
- 1. We were up very early,..... to see the sun rise.
- 2. How can the buses possibly run..... with all these traffic jams?
- 3. The post goes at five. I'm hoping to get this letter written.....
- 4. The coach will be here at 12.13 if it's.....

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversations using *in*, *on* or *at*.

- ▶ Andrew: You only bought that book on Saturday. Have you finished it already?
Jessica: I read it *in* about three hours yesterday evening...
- 1. Vicky: Will the bank be open..... half past nine?
Daniel: Yes, it always opens absolutely..... time.
- 2. Sarah: We're leaving..... half past, and you haven't even changed.
Mark: It's OK. I can easily shower and change..... ten minutes.
- 3. Laura: Your mother's birthday is..... Monday, isn't it?
Trevor: Yes, I just hope this card gets there..... time.
- 4. Harriet: If we ever go camping again, it's going to be..... summer, not autumn.
Mike: Never mind. We'll be home..... two days, and then we'll be dry again.

BAI 103:

FOR, SINCE, AGO and BEFORE (For, since, ago và before)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in *for* or *since*.

Daniel: How long have you been learning English?

Ilona: Well, I studied it (▶) *for* five years at school, and I've been having evening classes (1)..... last summer. That's when I left school.

Daniel: And you're staying here (2)..... three months?

Ilona: That's right. I've been here (3)..... the end of April. I'm going to London (4)..... a week before I go home.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Look at the pictures and say how long people have been there. Use these phrases: *at his desk, in bed, in the garden, in the shop, on the road*



▶ half an hour



1 three days



2 breakfast



3 nine o'clock



4 five hours

▶ *She's been in the shop for half an hour.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

- Exercise 3: Put in a phrase with *for*, *since* or *ago*.

- I got here an hour ago. - What! You mean you've been waiting *for an hour*?
1. The phone last rang at four o'clock. - So you've had no calls.....?
 2. I haven't been to the dentist for ten years. - You last went to the dentist.....?
 3. I last saw Rachel on Monday. - Haven't you seen her.....?
 4. We've had six weeks without rain. - Yes, it hasn't rained.....
 5. It's three years since Laura got married. - Really? Has she been married.....?
 6. It's eight months since my brother had any work. - He lost his job.....?
 7. Mrs. Miles was taken ill three weeks ago. - You mean she's been ill....., and nobody's told me!

- Exercise 4:

Put in *ago* or *before*.

- This film looks familiar. Didn't we see it at the cinema about two years *ago*?
1. The road was wet when the accident happened. It had stopped raining only half an hour.....
 2. My telephone is working now. They repaired it a week.....
 3. A young man threw himself off this bridge last year. His girlfriend had left him two days.....

BAI 104:

DURING or WHILE? BY or UNTIL? AS or LIKE?

(During hay While? By hay Until? As hay Like?)

- Exercise 1:

Put in *during* or *while*.

- Did you take notes *during* the lecture?
1. Shall we have a coffee..... we're waiting?
 2. Try not to make any noise..... the baby is asleep.
 3. The fire alarm rang..... yesterday's meeting.
 4. Trevor tried to fix the shelves..... Laura was out shopping.

- Exercise 2:

Rachel is *talking* to her teacher. Put in *by* or *until*.

Mrs. Lewis: You'll need to hand your project in (►) *by* the end of the week. I'd like to have it (1)..... Friday, ideally.

Rachel: Well, I'm going on a three-day study trip tomorrow. I'll be away (2)..... Thursday. The project will probably take me (3)..... the middle of next week. I can't finish it (4)..... the end of this week.

Mrs. Lewis: Well, let me have it (5)..... Wednesday of next week, please.

- Exercise 3:

Put in *as* or *like*.

- Sarah works in here. She uses this room *as* her study.
1. Matthew worked..... a waiter last summer.
 2. The way your sister plays the violin sounds..... two cat fighting.
 3. Do you mind using this saucer..... a plate.
 4. The body sank..... a stone to the bottom of the river.

- Exercise 4:

Put in *as* or *as if*.

► That poor dog looks *as if* it never gets fed.

1. Rachel failed her driving test,..... she expected.
2. Daniel spends money..... it grows on trees.
3. We shall deliver the goods on the twenty-seventh,..... we promised.
4. From what Emma said, it sounds..... she and Matthew are going to get married.

- Exercise 5:

Decide what to say. Use the word in brackets to join the two ideas together.

► Tell Matthew he needs to click on the box. You showed him. (like)
You need to click on the box, like I showed you.

1. Tell Tom that you arrived at his flat, but he'd left. (by the time)

2. Tell your friend that Rita went to the party with Tom. Your friend predicted this. (as)

3. Tell Claire that you saw her sister. You were shopping in London. (while)

4. Tell Vicky she can keep the book. She can finish it. (until)
 ,

BÀI 105:

PREPOSITION + NOUN, e.g. on holiday
(Giới từ + danh từ: on holiday, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in *by, from, in* or *on*.

- ▶ There's something I want to listen to *on* the radio.
1. They've promised me more money, but I haven't got it..... writing.
 2. Why can't you look at the problem..... my point of view?
 3. Would you mind moving? You're rather..... the way here.
 4. I rang the wrong number..... mistake.
 5. I booked our seats more than a month..... advance.
 6. Sarah's mobile phone was stolen while she was away..... a business trip.
 7. Could you be quiet for a minute, please? I'm..... the phone.
 8. We've had a few nice days, but..... general it's been a poor summer.
 9. I was lucky. I found the solution..... accident.
 10. It's a long journey. Let's stop somewhere..... the way and have a meal.
 11. I spent ages looking for a phone box. the end I found one.
 12. Are you here..... holiday or..... business?

📖 - Exercise 2:

What would you ask? Use the word in brackets with the correct preposition. You may also need to use *the* or *your*.

- ▶ Ask if you can book a cabin before you travel. (advance)

Can I book a cabin in advance?

1. Ask if you can pay in notes. (cash)

Can.....

ask if the information is current. (date)

ask your friend if he dropped the ball deliberately. (purpose)

ask

ask if there is anything to watch tonight. (television)

ask your teacher if he or she will be here on the last day of July. (end)

ask

ask Melanie if she thinks nuclear power is a good idea. (opinion)

ask Nick if he is selling his car. (sale)

ask Sarah if she approves of the plan in general. (whole)

Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Put in *by*, *in* or *on*.

: It's a long way to Glasgow. Why don't you go (►) on the train?

: I don't know. I think I'd rather go (1)..... car.

: How far is your hotel from the station?

: Oh, it's only five minutes (2)..... foot, but with all my luggage, I'd probably go (3)..... a taxi.

: Well, why not? It's less tiring going (4)..... train, isn't it?

: I could go (5)..... air. That would be quickest.

BÀI 106:

NOUN + PREPOSITION, e.g. trouble with
(Danh từ + giới từ: trouble with, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversation. Put in *at, in* or *of*

Daniel: What's the job you've applied for?

Vicky: It's with a travel company. But the advert says that you need some experience (►) *of* work in tourism. I haven't got that. And I don't think my knowledge (1)..... foreign languages will be good enough. I'm having no success at all (2)..... my attempts to get a job.

Daniel: What about your interest (3)..... computers? And your skill (4)..... typing? That's the sort of thing employers are looking for.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences. Use a preposition after these nouns: *answer, cause, damage, difficulty, invitation, matter, tax, way*

► I've had an *invitation to* Laura's barbecue.

1. The accident caused some..... the car.
2. I'm trying to think of the best..... getting this piano upstairs.
3. I can't think of an..... the problem, I'm afraid.
4. The..... the accident is still unknown.
5. The government has introduced a new..... luxury goods.
6. Unfortunately there was some..... the arrangements.
7. The television won't come on. What's the..... it?

📖 - Exercise 3:

Complete the advertisement for a supermarket. Put in *between, for, in, of* or *with*.

Why not shop at Greenway Supermarket? You'll find the cost (►) *of* your weekly shopping is much lower. There's quite a contrast

(1)..... other stores. Here's one example (2)..... this:
 from today many of our products have a price reduction (3).....
 five percent! But this is not the only reason (4)..... Greenway's
 success. We're proud of our good relationship (5)..... our
 customers. We believe there is simply no substitute (6).....
 quality. And there is no lack (7)..... choice at Greenway. That's
 the difference (8)..... Greenway and ordinary stores.

- Exercise 4:

What are they saying? Read about each situation and complete the sentence.

► A motorist has rung the garage and requested a breakdown truck.

Mechanic: I've just had a *request for a breakdown truck*.

1. Claude can answer all the quiz questions.

Claude: I can tell you the

2. Matthew doesn't know any French.

Matthew: Unfortunately I have no.....

3. The Prime Minister greatly desires progress.

Prime Minister: I have a great

4. Vicky thinks the two colours are the same.

Vicky: I can't see any

5. Most people say they prefer Zedco products.

Zedco: Most people express a

BAI 107:

ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION, e.g. proud of
(Tính từ + giới từ: proud of, ...)

 - Exercise 1:

Say what these people's feelings are. Use the adjectives in brackets and a preposition.

- The children are leaving on a trip to the zoo. (excited)

They're excited about the trip to the zoo.

1. Vicky doesn't like the dark. (afraid)

She's

2. Nick was watching a video, but he's going to switch it off. (bored)

He's

3. Emma is reading about computers. (interested)

She's

4. Mark has just heard some news that he didn't expect. (surprised)

He's

5. United have won a victory. (proud)

They're

6. Olivia's children are being very silly. (annoyed)

She's

7. The Zedco staff don't think their pay increase is big enough. (not satisfied)

.....

 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in *at, for* or *to*.

Sarah: You were very rude (►) *to* Henry when you said he needs to lose weight.

Claire: Well, it's true. Exercise would be good (1)..... him. He started jogging and then gave it up.

Sarah: Yes, but we can't all be good (2)..... taking physical exercise.

Claire: Anyone can do a bit of jogging. You don't have to be brilliant
(3)..... it. And eating so much must be bad
(4)..... you.

Sarah: Well, you could have been more polite.

Claire: Sorry. I'm not very good (5)..... saying the right thing.
I'll try to be nice (6)..... him next time I see him.

- Exercise 3:

Complete these paragraphs from a letter Emma has received from her brother. Use these adjectives and put a preposition after each one: *aware, different, famous, full, interested, late, ready, responsible, similar, used*

Everything was strange here at first because this new job is (►) *different* from any I've had before. But I've got (►) *used to* it now, and I'm really enjoying it. I'm mainly (1)..... controlling the costs of the project. The work is quite hard, and I must say I feel (2)..... a holiday. The company expect people to do overtime. I wasn't (3)..... that before I arrived because they hadn't told me at the interview, but I don't mind. I've got a nice flat, which is very (4)..... the one I had in London. The only difference is that my flat here is (5)..... horrible old furniture. I keep falling over it! I live right by the harbour. It's a pity I've never been (6)..... boats, because this is a good place for sailing. The noise of the motor boats wakes me up every morning, so I'm never (7)..... work. The area is (8)..... its seafood, which is great, because I love eating fish, as you know.

TEST 20

📖 - Exercise 1:

Write the sentences correctly.

► ~~I'll see you at Monday.~~

I'll see you on Monday.

1. ~~The doctor has been working since twelve hours.~~

2. ~~We had a great time in the disco.~~

3. ~~The woman was getting from the car.~~

4. ~~The players had numbers at their shirts.~~

5. ~~The new manager takes over at two weeks' time.~~

6. ~~Anna drove at the garage to get some petrol.~~

7. ~~We were sitting in the back of the room.~~

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read Polly's postcard and write the missing words. Use **one word only** in each space. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

This is our first real holiday (►) *for* ages, and I'm enjoying it tremendously. I love being (1)..... an island. We arrived here almost a week (2)....., and I can't believe the time is going so fast. We finally completed the journey here (3) Friday evening (4) about eleven o'clock. The journey wasn't too bad, but we had to wait ages (5)..... the airport for our flight. Our apartment here is fine. It's (6)..... the top floor. The beach isn't far away - we can walk there (7)..... five minutes. The only

problem is that we have to get (8) a busy main road, which can be difficult.

We don't do much (9)..... the day, but we go out every evening. Last night's disco went on very late, and today we slept (10)..... eleven.

- Exercise 3:

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ▶ The cat was sitting on top of the shed. ✓
- ▶ Coventry is near ~~by~~ Birmingham. *by*
- 1. Luckily our train arrived on the time.
- 2. People were running away from the gunman.
- 3. It sounds as if the company is in trouble.
- 4. The car was in the front of a bus.
- 5. There's a meeting on next Tuesday.
- 6. Lisa drew a plan on the back of an envelope.
- 7. I'll be exhausted by the time I get home.

- Exercise 4:

Decide which word is correct.

- ▶ I saw a really funny programme *on* television.
- a) at b) from c) in d) on
- 1. You can see all the information..... the screen.
- a) at b) in c) inside d) on
- 2. Are these pictures..... sale?
- a) at b) for c) in d) to
- 3. Could you let me know..... Friday at the latest?
- a) by b) to c) up to d) until
- 4. The audience clapped..... the end of the show.
- a) at b) for c) in d) to
- 5. I've lived here..... last year.
- a) after b) by c) for d) since
- 6. What's the matter..... your car?
- a) by b) for c) on d) with

7. We could see the balloon high..... the town.
a) above b) on c) onto d) up
8. There was a fall..... ten percent in prices.
a) at b) by c) in d) of
9. The house was burgled..... we were out.
a) at b) during c) time d) while
10. What's the difference..... a boat and a ship?
a) between b) from c) under d) with
11. Rupert's new car looks more an aeroplane.
a) as b) like c) near d) similar
12. We're all bored this game.
a) about b) at c) for d) with
13. I can't find my keys. I had them a minute
a) ago b) before c) behind d) back
14. We get lots of requests help.
a) at b) for c) of d) on
15. The babysitter will stay there we get home.
a) by b) for c) to d) until
16. I'm going to be late the meeting.
a) at b) for c) in d) to
17. We do most of our business summer.
a) along b) at c) in d) on
18. The job is similar my old one.
a) as b) at c) to d) with

- Exercise 5:

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- This is the Glasgow train. (going)

This train is going to Glasgow.

1. Scott is a resident of Washington. (lives)
.....
2. I'm travelling to Italy as part of my job. (business)
.....
3. Friday morning is a busy time for me. (I'm)
.....

-
4. They started playing an hour ago. (been)
.....
 5. Jonathan can play tennis very well. (good)
.....
 6. I'm rather busy now. (moment)
.....
 7. We took a plane to Budapest. (air)
.....
 8. Nigel passes the news agent's every day. (goes)
.....
 9. The company is planning to reduce the workforce. (reduction)
.....
 10. We got to our guest-house early enough for a meal. (time)
.....

BÀI 108:

PREPOSITIONAL VERB, e.g. wait for
(Động từ + giới từ: wait for, ...)

 - Exercise 1:

Complete the conversation between Laura and her friend Olivia. Put in *after, at, for* and *into*.

Laura: Did you say you were looking (►) *for* an au pair?

Olivia: Yes, I was just looking (1)..... this advertisement. We need someone to look (2)..... our children.

Laura: Do you have to pay an au pair?

Olivia: I'm not sure. I'll have to look (3)..... how it all works.

 - Exercise 2:

This is part of a letter that Melanie has received from an old friend. Put in these verbs and add a preposition after each one: *agree, applied, ask, care, caring, concentrate, decided, pay, suffering*

I'm working in a hospital now. I (►) *applied for* a nurse's job last July and started in August. I don't earn much money, and I even had to (1)..... my uniform out of my own money. Perhaps I should (2)..... a pay rise. But I don't really (3)..... the money. The work is the important thing. Of course it's very hard work (4)..... the patients, and at the moment I'm (5)..... backache. But I knew it would be like this when I (6)..... a career in nursing. I just try to forget all the problems and (7)..... the job. I think it's a worthwhile thing to do, and I'm sure you (8)..... me.

 - Exercise 3:

Put in the verbs and add a preposition if necessary.

Mark and Sarah had accepted an invitation to Mike and Harriet's party. Sarah had to stay late at work to (►) *see to* (see) one or two things. Her boss really (1)..... (relies) her. It's usually Sarah who

(2)..... (deals) all the little problems. Sarah didn't really
 (3)..... (feel) going to a party but thought she ought to keep
 Mark company. She decided to go straight to the party instead of going
 home first. She (4)..... (reached) the house just after nine. Mark
 was sitting in his car outside waiting for her. He was (5).....
 (listening) the radio. Sarah (6)..... (apologized) being late. At
 the party Mark talked to a strange woman who (7)..... (believed)
 ghosts. Sarah met a man who kept (8)..... (laughing) his own
 jokes. She managed to get away from him but couldn't avoid a woman
 who wanted to (9)..... (discuss) house prices. Mark and Sarah
 (10)..... (left) the party early and drove home feeling exhausted.

□ - Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Put in *about, of* or *to*.

David: Did you hear about my experience at the Quick Burger cafe?

Harriet: No. And I've never heard (►) of the Quick Burger cafe.

David: Oh, it's near the station. I was just talking (1).....

Melanie about it. They took at least twenty minutes to bring me a
 burger. I don't call that quick. I complained (2)..... the
 waitress, and she poured a can of cola over me.

Harriet: Really? She must have had a bad day.

David: The manager wasn't there, so I've written (3)..... him to
 complain (4)..... the service. It was terrible. I wouldn't
 go there if I were you.

Harriet: I wouldn't dream (5)..... going there. I hate those burger
 places.

BÀI 109:

VERB + OBJECT + PREPOSITION
(Động từ + tân ngữ + giới từ)
📖 - Exercise 1:

This is a sports commentary at the Olympic Games. Put in the correct prepositions, e.g. *for, from*.

So Australia's Steve Brearley wins the gold medal ahead of Germany's Klaus Schliemann and Ivan Podorosky of Bulgaria. They're just congratulating Brearley (►) *on* his victory. His Speed over the first kilometre split the runners (1)..... two groups, and in the end it was a race between the three leaders. Brearley prevented Schliemann (2)..... overtaking him in a sprint finish. I've always regarded Brearley (3)..... a great athlete, and look how well he's done today. I would even compare him (4)..... the great Emil Kristo himself. There's no doubt now that Brearley will be invited (5)..... Oslo for the next World Championships. So the Australian runner adds another medal (6)..... his collection. And Australia are doing really well in the medals table. In fact, they share second place (7)..... the United States.

📖 - Exercise 2:

People are saying some surprising things. Complete the replies using a verb + object + preposition.

► Andrew: I've bought a lot of books. I've spent £310.

Emma: What? Have you really *spent £310 on books*?

1. Jessica: I don't like wine. I prefer water.

Daniel: I don't believe that. Do you really.....

2. Melanie: You heard about David's accident. Well, he's blaming Tom.

Rita: But why? Why is he.....

3. Henry: I gave Claire a present, but she didn't thank me.

Sarah: Did you say she didn't.....

4. Tom: The police say it's murder. They're accusing the head teacher.

- Rita: What evidence do they have? How can they.....
5. Vicky: We had no towels. The hotel didn't provide them.
Rachel: Really? Why didn't they.....
6. Natasha: It's my sister's wedding today, but she didn't invite me.
Emma: What! Do you mean she didn't.....
7. Nick: The team won a great victory, but no one congratulated them.
Trevor: Oh? And why didn't anyone.....
8. David: A man pointed a gun. Melanie was terrified.
Harriet: You mean someone.....

- Exercise 3:

Put in *about*, *of* or *to*

- The interviewer asked Mrs. Miles *about* her parachute jump.
- I've told the police..... people throwing stones at our windows.
 - That man over there reminds me..... someone I know.
 - The man explained..... the court that he had some personal problems.
 - Vicky is writing a letter..... her friends in Toronto.
 - There was a poster warning young people..... the dangers of drugs.
 - Melanie had to remind Nick..... the money he owed her.
 - We would like to inform our customers..... a number of improvements in the service we offer.

BÀI 110:

PHRASAL VERBS (1)
(Cụm động từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Work out the meaning of these phrasal verbs and put them in the right sentences: *come back*, *come in*, *cut out*, *fall over*, *get on*, *give away*, *go away*, *let in*, *lie down*, *pay back*, *stay in*, *take back* (Use a dictionary if you need to.)

- ▶ Hello. Nice to see you. *Come in* and sit down.
- ▶ I didn't have a key, but luckily someone was there to *let me in*.
- 1. Can't we go out somewhere? I don't want to..... all evening.
- 2. Could you lend me ten pounds? I'll you..... on Friday.
- 3. The pavement is very icy. Be careful you don't.....
- 4. I was feeling so tired I had to..... on the bed for a while.
- 5. There was an article in the newspaper that I wanted to..... an keep.
- 6. Mark's gone out, and I don't know when he's going to.....
- 7. The driver unlocked the coach so that the passengers were able to.....
- 8. I'll have to..... these books..... to the library.
- 9. Your brother was being a nuisance, so I told him to.....
- 10. In order to get publicity, the company decided to..... some of the new sweets free to children.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in a phrasal verb that means the same as the verb in bracket. Use the correct form of the phrasal verb.

Rachel: I've (▶) *found out* (discovered) what the problem is with the exam.

Vicky: Oh, good. Tell me.

Rachel: When they printed the papers, they (1)..... (omitted) page. No one noticed until the papers had all been

(2)..... (distributed). Now they'll have to
 (3)..... (discard) all the papers and (4).....
 (postpone) the exam.

cy: Are you sure you haven't (5)..... (invented) this whole story?

hel: It's true, I tell you. And isn't it good news?

cy: I don't know about that. It means we'll have to (6).....
 (continue) revising.

Exercise 3:

Complete the sentences by putting in the phrasal verbs. Some of the
 boxes you have to leave empty. Sometimes more than one answer is
 correct.

The sweater was full of holes, so I *threw it away* (threw away).

We *put up* (put up) that picture we bought last week.

There's always litter here. No one ever..... it.....
 (pick up).

It's quite cold now. I think I'll..... my coat..... (put on).

I haven't heard from Rita lately. I might..... her.....
 (ring up).

Daniel has to go into college to..... his project.....
 (hand in).

I can't remember the address. I wish I'd..... it.....
 (write down).

Jack is trying to..... all the money he's just lost.....
 (win back).

I'm not going to have time to..... these dishes.....
 (wash up).

If you don't know the number, you can..... it.....
 (look up) in the phone book.

There was an accident which..... all the traffic coming into
 town..... (held up).

The words 'expect' and 'except' are so similar that I keep.....
 (mix up).

BÀI 111:

PHRASAL VERBS (2) (Cụm động từ)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the pictures and say what is happening.

Use these phrasal verbs: *dig up*, *pick up*, *plug in*, *throw away*, *wash up*

Use these objects: *the armchair*, *litter*, *the plates*, *the road*, *the television*



► They're throwing the armchair away.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

📖 - Exercise 2:

Rewrite the sentences replacing each underlined verb with a phrasal verb.

► We're trying to arrange a holiday together.

We're trying to fix up a holiday together.

1. Nick says he's stopped smoking.

.....

2. How did the accident happen?

.....
 think Matthew and Emma have quarrelled.

.....
 ie problem isn't going to just disappear.

.....
 ie government is introducing a new tax on computers.

.....
 dco want to establish a new sales office in Germany.

Exercise 3:

**Complete the news article about Zedco. Put in these words: *fallen
 id, fell through, fight off, laying off, put forward, sort out, step
 t, taking over, taken on***

.....
 o Chief Executive Barry Douglas has to put forward a new plan
 ned to (1)..... the company's problems. It is only twelve
 hs since Zedco tried to strengthen its position by (2).....
 a Plastics. But the deal (3)..... , and Alpha managed to
 Zedco's attempts to take control. Since then Zedco has
 rmed poorly and has (5)..... in the race for market share.
 aging Director James Ironside has had to (6)..... , and Barry
 las has (7)..... the task of rescuing the company. There are
 that the new plan will mean (8)..... staff in order to reduce
 nditure.

BÀI 112:

PHRASAL VERBS (3)
(Cụm động từ)
📖 - Exercise 1:

Look back at B and then write the meaning of the underlined word in these sentences.

► I must get these ideas down in writing.

on paper

1. Daniel finished all the cake up.

2. I'm writing in pencil so I can rub out my mistakes.

3. Vicky didn't answer. She just went on reading.

4. I'll just read over what I've written.

5. A woman in the audience shouted something out.

6. The water was turned off for about an hour today.

7. Nick's aggressive manner frightens people off.

8. The company wants to keep its costs down.

9. The embassy was burnt down by terrorists.

10. Someone will have to type all these figures out.

11. Social workers were giving out soup to the hungry.

12. Luckily Zedco's sales figures are moving up again.

13. The man was tall and dark. He had a blue jacket on.

14. Business is so bad that many firms have shut down.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in the correct adverb.

► Melanie: Everything is so expensive. Prices seem to be going *up* the time.

David: Yes, and the government is supposed to be bringing inflation *down*.

1. Laura: You shouldn't leave the television..... all night

Trevor: Sorry, I forgot. I usually turn it.....

2. Vicky: I've written the wrong word here.

Shel: Well, rub it.....

Ky: I can't. It's in biro. I'll have to write the whole thing.....
again.

Ah: They're going to pull..... this beautiful old building.

Rk: I know. Some protesters were handing.....leaflets
about it.

Nma: Hold.....a minute. I thought I heard someone
ll.....

Atthew: I think you must have imagined it.

Exercise 3:

What are they saying? Put in the phrasal verbs.



I'm afraid the car has *broken down*.

Why don't you..... this coat?

Look, the plane is.....

I can't hear. Please.....

We're just..... on holiday.

BÀI 113:

VERB + ADVERB + PREPOSITION
(Động từ + trạng ngữ + giới từ)
📖 - Exercise 1:

Put in these words: *away from, down on, in from, out into, through up at, up onto*

- To reach the light bulb, Trevor had to get *up onto* the table.
1. Nick hurt himself when he was skating. He fell..... the ice.
 2. It was a very long tunnel, but we finally came..... sunshine.
 3. Wondering if it was going to rain, Vicky looked..... clouds.
 4. People were running..... the gunman as fast as they could.
 5. I'm trying to phone my secretary, but I can't get..... the office.
 6. When I've come..... the cold, I just want to sit by the fire.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Put in a verb + adverb + preposition which means the same as the expression in brackets.

- I'm afraid this product doesn't *live up to* (be as good as) the claim made in the advertisement.
1. I'll just call at the garage. I don't want to..... (have none left) petrol.
 2. If you want a catalogue, I'll..... (write to ask for) one.
 3. We'd better..... (be careful about) sheep in the road.
 4. I.....(think ahead with pleasure about) seeing you again soon, Emma.
 5. The teacher was dictating so fast we couldn't..... (go as fast as) her.
 6. Why should we have to..... (tolerate) this awful noise?
 7. It's half past twelve. I'd better..... (start) making lunch.
 8. Do you think the committee will..... (change) their ears?

decision?

9. There was a problem with the cheque, so I decided to
(contact) my bank immediately.
10. I always like to..... (enter) quiz competitions.
11. I'm trying to..... (reduce) the amount of coffee I drink.
12. I might lose my job. And I haven't got any savings to.....
(use if necessary).
13. I've been meaning to reply to Rachel's letter, but I haven't managed
to..... (find the right time for) it yet.
14. An apology alone cannot.....(compensate for) all the
inconvenience.

- Exercise 3:

What might you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

- You're tired. You can't go jogging. (don't feel up)

I don't feel up to jogging.

1. You like Melanie. The two of you are very friendly. (I get)
.....
2. You might go and see David. It would be a short visit. (might drop)
.....
3. You don't mind what you do. You'll do the same as everyone else. (I'll
fit)
.....
4. You are too slow. Matthew is too far ahead of you. (can't catch up)
.....
5. The sunny weather is nice. Last week was terrible. (is making up)
.....

TEST 21

- Exercise 1:

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

► I won't forget the titles of the books. down / I've / them / written
I've written them down.

- I'll give you the money. for / I / must / my ticket / pay

- I have to look smart. going to / I'm / on / put / that expensive grey coat
 I bought

- Anna rang. invited / lunch / she's / to / us

- Peter's got the photos. at / he's / looking / them

- I wasn't allowed to go. from / leaving / me / prevented / the police

- This programme is boring. going to / I'm / it / off / turn

- Exercise 2:

Decide which word is correct.

- I'm not speaking to Oliver. I've fallen *out* with him.
 a) away b) back c) out d) through
- Everyone complained..... the awful food.
 a) about b) for c) on d) over
 - You don't need this word. You should cross it.....
 a) down b) out c) over d) up
 - It's late. How much longer are you going to go..... working?
 a) along b) on c) through d) with
 - My shoes are dirty. I'd better take them..... before I come in.
 a) away b) off c) on d) up
 - The bus journey costs more now. They've put the fares.....

- a) down b) out c) over d) up
5. We all laughed the cartoon.
a) at b) for c) on d) to
7. We'd all decided to go on holiday together, but the plan fell
I'm afraid.
a) away b) back c) out d) through
3. I suppose you're being nice to make the awful way you behaved yesterday.
a) away of b) down on c) in with d) up for

- Exercise 3:

Write the correct sentence.

- Could you be a little quieter, please? ~~I'm trying to concentrate at my work.~~

I'm trying to concentrate on my work.

1. You haven't answered all the questions. ~~You've left one away.~~
.....
2. Where is Bigbury? ~~I've never heard about it.~~
.....
3. The children were frightened of the dog. ~~They ran out of it.~~
.....
4. Michelle has got the job. ~~You must congratulate her for her success.~~
.....
5. My sister is in computers. ~~She's going to set out her own company.~~
.....
6. I like Peter. ~~He reminds me about an old school friend of mine.~~
.....
7. Adrian has a suggestion. ~~He wants to put it ahead at the meeting.~~
.....

- Exercise 4:

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

This true story is about a policeman in New York City who had a girlfriend he cared (►) *for* very much. I don't know if you regard New York City (1)..... a dangerous place, but the hero of our

story certainly did, and he warned his girlfriend (2)..... the danger of walking the streets alone and the need to (3)..... out for muggers. But as he also believed (4)..... being prepared for the worst, he bought a can of gas that would protect his girlfriend (5)..... muggers. It certainly seemed worth spending a few dollars (6)..... The idea is that you point the thing (7)..... your attacker and spray him with the gas, which knocks him (8)..... On the day he bought the gas, the policeman and his girlfriend had arranged to go (9)..... for the evening. So he was looking (10)..... to giving her the can later on. When he got home from work, he had a bath and then sprayed some deodorant on himself. He knew nothing more until he (11)..... up in hospital the next day. He had picked (12)..... the wrong can and sprayed himself with the gas.

- Exercise 5:

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

► I'm trying to find my diary. (looking)

I'm looking for my diary.

1. You're too young to stop working. (give)

.....

2. This bag is Janet's. (belongs)

.....

3. Everyone continued working as usual. (carried)

.....

4. They talked about the plan. (discussed)

.....

5. I haven't got any money left. (run)

.....

6. I told the police what the problem was. (explained)

.....

7. I wouldn't tolerate such terrible conditions. (put)

.....

8. They'll have to postpone the game. (off)

.....

BÀI 114:

DIRECT SPEECH and REPORTED SPEECH
(Câu trực tiếp và câu gián tiếp)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Why are these people at the doctor's? What do they say is wrong with them?



► I get pains in my leg.



1 I can't sleep.



2 I've hurt my back.



3 I feel sick all the time.



4 I fell over and hurt myself.

► She says *she gets pains in her leg.*

1. She says.....
2. He says.....
- 3.....
- 4.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Who said what? Match the words to the people and report what they said.

► Mrs. Thatcher

1. Stokeley Carmichael
2. Galileo
3. Shakespeare
4. George Orwell

a) 'All the world's a stage.'

b) 'Black is beautiful.'

c) 'Big Brother is watching you.'

d) 'There is no such thing as society.'

e) 'The earth moves round the sun.'

► *Mrs. Thatcher said that there is no such thing as society.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

□ - Exercise 3:

Put in *tell* or *say*.

► All the experts *say* the earth is getting warmer.

► Did you *tell* Mark and Sarah how to find our house?

1. The Sales Manager is going to..... everyone about the meeting.
2. Vicky, why don't you just..... what the matter is?
3. They..... they're going to build a new Disney World here.
4. What did Natasha..... about her holiday plans?
5. Could you me the way to the train station, please?
6. The company should..... its employees what's going on.
7. You shouldn't..... lies, you know, Matthew.
8. Did you..... anything to Melanie about the barbecue?

BÀI 115:

REPORTED SPEECH: PERSON,
PLACE and TIME(Sự thay đổi của đại từ chỉ người, trạng từ chỉ
địa điểm và chỉ thời gian trong câu gián tiếp) - Exercise 1:

Read what each person says and then complete the sentences.

- Vicky: Daniel told me on Friday that he'd had a job interview the previous day.

Daniel had a job interview on *Thursday*.

1. Trevor: Laura tells me I need a haircut.
..... needs a haircut.
2. Claire: My brother told me in 1997. that he expected to become Manager the following year.
Claire's brother expected that he would become Manager in.....
3. Alice: I wanted to see Mark in April, but he said he was very busy that month.
Mark was very busy in.....
4. Harriet: I saw Nick last week. He said he'd given up smoking the week before.
Nick gave up smoking..... ago.

 - Exercise 2:

Put in the missing words.





📖 - Exercise 3:

Put in *here, that day, the day before, the next day, the week before.*

► Rachel (a week ago): I'm taking my driving test tomorrow.

You (today): When I saw Rachel, she said she was taking her driving test *the next day*.

1. Emma (two days ago): I've only had this new computer since yesterday.

You (today): Emma said she'd only had the new computer since.....

2. Matthew (a week ago): I'm meeting a friend at the station later today.

You (today): Matthew said he was meeting a friend at the station later.....

3. Mark (in the street): I'll see you in the office.

You (in the office): Mark said he would see me.....

4. Sarah (a month ago): The conference was last week.

You (today): Sarah told me the conference had taken place.....

BÀI 116:

REPORTED SPEECH: THE TENSE CHANGE

(Sự thay đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp)

- Exercise 1:

Put in *is* or *was*. Sometimes both are possible.

- ▶ I heard today that the house *is* for sale. I wonder who will buy it.
- ▶ I saw David yesterday. He said he *was* on his way to visit his sister.
- 1. This wallet is made of plastic not leather. Why did you tell me it..... leather?
- 2. We had to hurry yesterday morning. Just as we arrived at the station, we heard an announcement that..... the train about to leave.
- 3. I saw Emma just now. She said her tooth..... still aching.
- 4. I'm surprised Matthew lost. I thought he..... much better at tennis than Daniel.
- 5. When he spoke to reporters yesterday, Mr. Douglas said that Zedco..... now in a much better financial position.

- Exercise 2:

Complete the replies. The second speaker is surprised at what he or she hears.

- ▶ Matthew: Emma and I are getting married.
Rachel: Really? But you said last week *you weren't getting married*.
- ▶ Rita: I like pop music more than classical music.
Laura: I'm sure you told me *you liked classical music best*.
- 1. Vicky: I haven't finished my project.
Emma: Haven't you? I thought you said
- 2. Rachel: I'm on a diet.
Natasha: But you told me.
- 3. Andrew: I enjoy parties.
Daniel: Surely I remember you saying
- 4. Matthew: I'm applying for the job.

Rachel: I thought you told me

 - Exercise 3:

A comedy show called 'Don't Look Now!' has just closed after five years in London's West End. Here's what the critics said when it opened five years ago.

- ▶ 'It's a marvellous show.' *The Daily Mail*
- ▶ 'You'll love it.' *The Guardian*
- 1. 'The production is brilliant.' *The Sunday Times*
- 2. 'I can't remember a funnier show.' *Edward Devine*
- 3. 'It made me laugh.' *Robert Walsh*
- 4. 'You must see it.' *The Evening Standard*
- 5. 'It will be a great success.' *The Telegraph*
- 6. 'You might die laughing.' *The Express*
- 7. 'It's the funniest show I've ever seen.' *Susan Proctor*
- 8. 'You shouldn't miss it.' *Time Out*

Now report what the critics said.

- ▶ *The Daily Mail* said it was a marvellous show.
- ▶ *The Guardian* said people would love it

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

BÀI 117:

REPORTED QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi gián tiếp)

Exercise 1:

These people are at the tourist information centre. What do they want to know?



- ▶ She wants to know what the most interesting sights are.
- ▶ He wants to know if the centre has got a town plan.

1.
2.
3.
4.

Exercise 2:

You need information. Ask for it using *Could you tell me...?* or *Do you know...?*

- ▶ Where are the toilets? (tell)
Could you tell me where the toilets are?
- ▶ Can I park here? (know)

- ▶ How long does the film last? (tell)

3. How often do the buses run? (know)

4. Are we allowed to smoke? (know)

5. What time is the flight? (tell)

6. How much does a ticket cost? (tell)

- Exercise 3:

Barry Douglas, Zedco Chief Executive, is talking to a reporter about his business career. He can still remember his first job interview after leaving school.

Interviewer: (►) 'Where do you live?'

Barry: The interviewer asked me *where I lived*.

Interviewer: (►) 'Have you worked before?'

Barry: She asked me *if I had worked before*.

1. Interviewer: 'Why do you want the job?'

Barry: She wanted to know

2. Interviewer: 'How did you hear about it?'

Barry: I remember she asked

3. Interviewer: 'Are you fit?'

Barry: She wondered.....

4. Interviewer: 'Can you work on Saturdays?'

Barry: Then she asked me

5. Interviewer: 'How will you travel to work?'

Barry: She wanted to know

6. Interviewer: 'Have you got a bicycle?'

Barry: And she asked me.....

7. Interviewer: 'How much do you hope to earn?'

Barry: She also asked

8. Interviewer: 'When can you start?'

Barry: And finally she asked

BÀI 118:

REPORTED REQUESTS, OFFERS, etc
(Yêu cầu gián tiếp, đề nghị gián tiếp, ...)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Trevor isn't feeling very happy. Everyone has been telling him what to do. Report the orders and requests.

- His mother: Can you dig my garden, please, Trevor?

His mother asked him to dig her garden.

1. The doctor: You must take more exercise.

2. His boss: Would you mind not playing computer games in the office?

3. A traffic warden: You can't park your car in the High Street.

4. Laura: Could you put some shelves up, please, Trevor?

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the sentences. Report what was said.

► Would you like to stay for lunch, Claire?

► All right. I won't talk about football.

1. You ought to take a break, Andrew.

2. I'm sorry I forgot the shopping.

3. Why don't we sing a few songs?

4. You're going to post the letter, don't forget, Vicky.

5. Yes, I made a mistake.

6. Laura! Don't touch the electric wires!

- Sarah invited *Claire to stay for lunch.*

- Tom agreed *not to talk about football.*

1. Matthew advised.....

2. Mike apologized.....
3. Tom suggested.....
4. Rachel reminded.....
5. Mr Atkins admitted.....
6. Trevor warned.....

 - Exercise 3:

Combine each pair of sentences using that.

- The roads were dangerous. The police warned us.

The police warned us that the roads were dangerous.

1. Everything will be ready on time. The builders have promised.
.....
2. We have to check the figures carefully. The boss insists.
.....
3. Tom's story wasn't completely true. He's admitted it.
.....
4. Emma's train was about to leave. Matthew reminded her.
.....

6. When I rang Tessa some time last week, she said she was busy..... day.
 a) that b) the c) then d) this
7. When he was at Oliver's flat yesterday, Martin asked if he..... use the phone.
 a) can b) could c) may d) must
8. Judy..... going for a walk, but no one else wanted to.
 a) admitted b) offered c) promised d) suggested

- Exercise 3:

Read the news report and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

Police have warned people (►) to watch out for two men who have tricked their way into an old woman's home and stolen money. The men called on Mrs. Iris Raine and said (1)..... were from the water company and wanted to check (2)..... her water was OK. They asked if (3)..... would mind letting them into her house. The woman didn't ask (4)..... see their identity cards. She said she (5)..... know about any problem with the water. The men explained that they (6)..... just discovered the problem but that it was very simple and (7)..... take long to check. The woman asked (8)..... the service was free, and they said yes. They (9)..... to know where the water tank was. While one man ran water in the kitchen, the other went upstairs and took several hundred pounds from a drawer in a bedroom. The men then left saying that they would return the (10)..... day to have another look.

- Exercise 4:

Complete each sentence by reporting what was said to you yesterday. Use *said* and change the tense in the reported speech.

► Polly: I'm really tired.

When I saw Polly yesterday, *she said she was really tired.*

1. Tessa: I feel quite excited.

When I saw Tessa yesterday,.....

2. Nigel: I can't remember the code word.
When I saw Nigel yesterday,
3. Robert: I won't be at the next meeting.
When I saw Robert yesterday,
4. The twins: We've got a problem.
When I saw the twins yesterday,
5. Michelle: I've been swimming.
When I saw Michelle yesterday,
6. Your friends: We would like to be in the show.
When I saw my friends yesterday,
7. Adrian: I don't need any help.
When I saw Adrian yesterday,
8. Susan: My sister is coming to see me.
When I saw Susan yesterday,

- Exercise 5:

Report the sentences. They were all spoken last week. Use the verbs in brackets.

- Anna to Janet: Don't forget to sign the form. (remind)
Anna reminded Janet to sign the form.
- Robert: What time will the office close this evening? (ask)
Robert asked what time the office would close that evening.
1. A policeman to Christopher: Stop shouting. (tell)
.....
2. Tessa: It was me. I ate all the cake yesterday. (admit)
.....
3. Adrian: I'm sorry I was rude. (apologize)
.....
4. Simon to Susan: Would you like to join me for lunch? (invite)
.....
5. Martin to Nancy: Did someone ring you an hour ago? (ask)
.....
6. Peter: I really must leave. (insist)
.....

BÀI 119:

RELATIVE CLAUSES- CLAUSES WITH WHO, WHICH and THAT

(Mệnh đề quan hệ - mệnh đề quan hệ với who/that/which)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Look at the information and identify which one is meant.

Use the shortest way of identifying where possible, e.g. *the tall boy*, not *the boy who is tall*.

- ▶ the boy (he is tall) → *the tall boy*
- ▶ the man (he has a beard) → *the man with a beard*
- ▶ the woman (she plays golf) → *the woman who plays golf*
- 1. the young man (he is at the door) →
- 2. the man (he plays his stereo at night) →
- 3. the woman (she is very thin) →
- 4. the girl (she has green eyes) →
- 5. the young woman (she is in the office) →
- 6. the man (he drives a taxi) →
- 7. the young man (he is smart) →
- 8. the student (she failed all her exams) →

📖 - Exercise 2:

Complete the conversation. Put in *who*, *which* or *that*. There is always more than one possible answer.

Emma: Shall we have something to eat?

Matthew: Yes, but not here. I don't like cafes (▶) *that* don't have chairs.
I'm not one of those people (▶) *who* can eat standing up.

Emma: There's another restaurant over there.

Matthew: It looks expensive, one of those places (1)..... charge very high prices. The only customers (2)..... can afford to eat there are business executives (3)..... get their expenses paid. Anyway, I can't see a menu. I'm not going into a restaurant (4)..... doesn't display a menu.

Emma: We just passed a cafe (5)..... does snacks.

Matthew: Oh, I didn't like the look of that.

Emma: You're one of those people (6)..... are never satisfied, aren't you?

- Exercise 3:

Combine the information to make news items. Make the sentence in brackets into a relative clause with *who* or *which*. Start each sentence with *the*, e.g. *The man....*

► A man has gone to prison. (He shot two policemen.)

The man who shot two policemen has gone to prison.

1. A bomb caused a lot of damage. (It went off this morning.)

.....

2. A scientist has won the Nobel Prize. (He discovered a new planet.)

.....

3. A footballer has been banned from playing again. (He took drugs.)

.....

4. A little girl has been found safe and well. (She had been missing since Tuesday.)

.....

5. A company has laid off thousands of workers. (It owns Greenway Supermarkets.)

.....

6. An old lady now wants to swim the English Channel. (She did a parachute jump.)

.....

BÀI 120:

RELATIVE CLAUSES - WITH OR WITHOUT WHO/THAT/WHICH

(Mệnh đề quan hệ có hoặc không có who/that/which)

- Exercise 1:

Comment on the conversations. Add a sentence with *who* or *that* as the subject of the underlined part.

► She's Tom's new girlfriend. - Who is? - That girl. She just said hello.

That's right. The girl who just said hello is Tom's new girlfriend.

1. The dog has been rescued. ~ What dog? ~ It fell down a hole.

Haven't you heard? The

2. The story was untrue. ~ What story? ~ You know. It upset everyone

Yes, the

3. He's a film producer. - Who is? - That man. He interviewed Natasha.

That's what I heard. The.....

Now comment on these conversations. Add a sentence with *who* or *that* as the object of the underlined part.

4. The accident wasn't very serious. ~ What accident? - Oh, Daniel saw it.

Yes, the

5. He's a millionaire. - Who is? - That man. Claire knows him.

It's true. The

6. The vase was extremely valuable. - What vase? - You know. David broke it.

That's right. The

7. It's really nice. - What is? - The jacket. Melanie wore it at the party.

Yes, it is. The

- Exercise 2:

Complete the script for these TV advertisements. Use a relative clause without a pronoun.

- Fresho soap. Beautiful people use it. *It's the soap beautiful people use.*
1. An Everyman car. You can afford it
 2. 'Hijack'. People want to see this film
 3. Greenway Supermarket. You can trust it
 4. 'Cool' magazine. Young people read it
 5. Jupiter chocolates. You'll love them

- Exercise 3:

Look carefully at these sentences. Are they correct without a relative pronoun? Where you see *, you may need to put in *who*, *which* or *that*. Write the sentences and put in a pronoun only if you have to.

- The man * paid for the meal was a friend of Tom's.
The man who paid for the meal was a friend of Tom's.
- The meeting * Mark had to attend went on for three hours.
The meeting Mark had to attend went on for three hours.
1. Somewhere I've got a photo of the mountain * we climbed.
.....
 2. The man * repaired my car is a real expert.
.....
 3. The detective lost sight of the man * he was following.
.....
 4. I thought I recognized the assistant * served us.
.....
 5. I'm afraid the numbers * I chose didn't win a prize.
.....

BÀI 121:

RELATIVE CLAUSE (3) - "EXTRA INFORMATION" CLAUSE (1)

Mệnh đề quan hệ (3) - mệnh đề "thông tin bổ sung"

📖 - Exercise 1:

Match the parts and write sentences with an adding clause. Use *who* or *which*.

► The Grand Canyon	He was in prison for 27 years.	He was one of the Beatles.
1. Nelson Mandela	He was killed in 1980.	He became President of South Africa.
2. John Lennon	It is 140 million miles away.	<u>It is one of the wonders of the world.</u>
3. The Titanic	<u>It is over 200 miles long.</u>	It is known as the red planet.
4. Queen Victoria	It sank in 1912.	It stood for 28 years.
5. Mars	It was built in 1961.	It was supposed to be unsinkable.
6. The Berlin Wall	She came to the throne in 1837.	She ruled over the British Empire.

► *The Grand Canyon, which is over 200 miles long, one of the wonders of the world*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Read the news article and then say what each relative clause does. Does it tell us which one, or does it add information?

The play (►) that the students put on last week was Oscar Wilde's 'The Importance of Being Earnest', (►) which was written in 1895. The college theatre, (1) which holds over 400 people, was unfortunately only half full for the Friday evening performance. However, the people (2) who bothered to attend must have been glad they did. Lucy Kellett, (3) who played Lady Bracknell, was magnificent. Unfortunately the young man (4) who played John Worthing forgot his lines twice, but that did not spoil the evening, (5) which was a great success.

► *It tells us which play.*

► *It adds information about 'The Importance of Being Earnest'.*

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....

□ - Exercise 3:

Put in the relative clauses. You may also need to put in one or two commas.

- (that Claire drives) This car is a lot cheaper than the one *that Claire drives*.
- (who has twins) Olivia, *who has twins*, often needs a babysitter.
1. (who took Rita to the party) The person..... was Tom.
 2. (who has a bad temper) Henry..... shouted at the waiter.
 3. (which Tom supports) The team is United.
 4. (who is afraid of heights) We all climbed up except Vicky.
 5. (which is on the tenth floor) My new flat..... has a terrific view.
 6. (she bought the sofa from) Sarah can't remember the name of the shop.....

BÀI 122:

RELATIVE CLAUSES (4) - "EXTRA INFORMATION" CLAUSES Mệnh đề quan hệ (4)- mệnh đề "thông tin bổ sung"

Exercise 1:

What are they saying? Put in sentences with a preposition at the en



► (Mark has been looking for this letter.) *This is the letter I've been looking for.*

1. (Rachel was talking about that film.)
2. (Laura has decided on this wallpaper.)
3. (Matthew played tennis with that man.)
4. (David fell down those steps.)

Exercise 2:

Match the phrases and write the definitions. Put the preposition at the end of the relative clause.

► a kitchen	a cupboard	you hit nails with it
1. a hammer	the person	you keep valuable things in it
2. your destination	a piece of furniture	you cook in it
3. a safe	the place	you can either sit or sleep on it
4. your opponent	a room	you're going to it
5. a sofa bed	a tool	you're playing against them

► *A kitchen is a room you cook in.*

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

□ - Exercise 3:

It's election time. All the politicians are arguing.

Rewrite the first sentence using a preposition at the beginning of a relative clause.

► I cannot agree with that statement. I hope I've made that clear.

That is a statement with which I cannot agree.

1. Our party believes in that idea. I say this from the bottom of my heart..
.....
2. I am strongly opposed to that policy. And I am not afraid to say so.
.....
3. No one cares about these people. They are the forgotten people.
.....
4. Your party should be ashamed of those mistakes. And everyone knows that.
.....
5. The government is now dealing with that problem. How many times do I have to tell you?
.....

TEST 23

Exercise 1:

Decide which word or phrase is correct.

► *What I really need is a long holiday.*

- a) that b) what c) which d) who
1. At last I've found the information that I was looking.....
- a) for b) for it c) for that d) it
2. Everyone..... the building was searched by the police.
- a) enter b) entered c) entering d) enters
3. The plane..... has just taken off is an hour late.
- a) it b) what c) which d) who
4. I had just one reply. Abco was the..... company to reply to my letter.
- a) last b) most c) only d) second
5. My friend Nigel,..... works in the City, earns much more than I do.
- a) that b) which c) who d) whose
6. Martin is someone with..... I usually agree.
- a) him b) that c) who d) whom
7. I'd like to see the photo.....
- a) took b) you took it
- c) that you took d) that you took it
8. Atlanta is the city..... the Olympic Games were held in 1996.
- a) that b) when c) where d) which
9. It rained all the time,..... was a great pity.
- a) that b) what c) which d) who
10. We passed shops..... windows were decorated for Christmas.
- a) the b) their c) which d) whose

Exercise 2:

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► ~~I've found the magazine who was missing.~~
I've found the magazine that was missing.

1. ~~This isn't the train on that I normally travel.~~

2. ~~The letter that I opened it wasn't for me.~~

3. ~~The reason because I didn't know was that no one had told me.~~

4. ~~That we should do is ring the police.~~

5. ~~I didn't know the name of the man helped me.~~

6. ~~Rupert knows the family who's house is for sale.~~

7. ~~Einstein who failed his university entrance exam discovered relativity.~~

8. ~~The person we talked to were very friendly.~~

9. ~~It's the President makes the important decisions.~~

10. ~~I can't find my diary, what is a real nuisance.~~

11. ~~Outside the door was a pair of boots covering in mud.~~

12. ~~Lake Superior, that lies on the US Canadian border, is the largest lake in North America.~~

📖 - Exercise 3:

Complete the story about a thief's punishment. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

This is a true story (►) *which* is supposed to have happened somewhere in the US. A man (1)..... was accused of housebreaking appeared in court. He had put his arm through the window of a house and stolen some money (2)..... was lying on a table inside. The argument (3)..... the man's lawyer put forward wasn't very impressive. He said that (4)..... was the man's arm

(5)..... had committed the crime and not the man himself. 'You cannot punish a man for (6)..... his arm has done,' said the lawyer. Now the judge in (7)..... court the man was appearing, wanted to show how stupid the lawyer's argument was. Instead of finding the man guilty, he found the man's arm guilty and sent it to prison. 'He can go with his arm or not, as he chooses,' the judge added (8)..... made everyone laugh. But (9)..... the judge didn't know was that the man had an artificial arm. He took the arm off and gave it to the judge - (10)..... could hardly believe his eyes - and walked out of the court.

- Exercise 4:

Combine the two sentences into one.

- ▶ That man was Anna's brother. He just walked past.
The man *who just walked past* was Anna's brother.
- 1. The plane was twenty-five years old. It crashed.
The plane..... twenty-five years old.
- 2. One day Tessa was ill in bed. Martin rang.
The day..... ill in bed.
- 3. Our offices are in Queen Street. They are new.
Our..... in Queen Street.
- 4. Some documents have been found. They were stolen from a car.
The documents..... found.
- 5. That map is out of date. You were looking at it.
The map..... out of date.
- 6. The King's Theatre is in the centre of town. It dates from 1896.
The King's..... in the centre of town.
- 7. A woman was terribly upset. Her dog was run over.
The woman..... terribly upset.
- 8. Janet solved the puzzle. She did it before everyone else.
Janet was..... the puzzle.
- 9. A man was standing outside the building. He was selling newspapers.
A man..... outside the building.
- 10. The talk was very interesting. Judy gave it.
The talk..... very interesting.
- 11. The house is empty now. I used to live there.
The house..... is empty now.

BÀI 123:

CONDITIONALS

(Câu điều kiện)

- Exercise 1:

Read the conversation and then choose the correct forms.

Rachel: Have you heard about the pop festival?

Vicky: Yes, (▶) it's/it'll be good if Express are playing. They're a great band. Rachel: Will you be able to go, Nick?

Nick: If (1) I ask/I'll ask my boss, he'll give me some time off work, I expect.

Vicky: How are we going to get there?

Rachel: Well, if (2) there are/there'll be enough people, we can hire a minibus.

Vicky: I won't be going if (3) it's/it'll be too expensive.

Rachel: It (4) isn't costing/won't cost much if we all (5) share/will share the cost.

Nick: If (6) I see/I'll see the others later on tonight, (7) I ask/I'll ask them if they want to go.

- Exercise 2:

Comment on the situations. Use "if + the present tense + will/can."

▶ It might rain. If it does, everyone can eat inside.

If it rains, everyone can eat inside.

▶ The children mustn't go near Nick's dog. It'll bite them.

If the children go near Nick's dog, it'll bite them.

1. Rachel might fail her driving test. But she can take it again.

.....

2. United might lose. If they do, Tom will be upset.

.....

3. The office may be closed. In that case Mark won't be able to get in.

.....

4. Nick may arrive a bit early. If he does, he can help Tom to get things ready.
.....
5. The party might go on all night. If it does, no one will want to do any work tomorrow.
.....
6. Emma may miss the train. But she can get the next one.
.....
7. Is Matthew going to enter the race? He'll probably win it.
.....

- Exercise 3:

Comment on these situations. Use a type 2 conditional with *would* or *could*.

- ▶ Andrew is such a boring person because he works all the time.
You know, if Andrew didn't work all the time, he wouldn't be such a boring person.
- ▶ You can't take a photo because you haven't got your camera.
How annoying. If I had my camera, I could take a photo.
- 1. You can't look the word up because you haven't got a dictionary.
I'm sorry.
- 2. You don't write to your friends because you're so busy.
I've got so much to do.
- 3. You can't play tennis because your back is aching.
It's a nuisance.
- 4. Claire won't marry Henry because she doesn't love him.
Of course,
- 5. Nick, can't find the way because he hasn't got a map.
Nicks lost, but
- 6. David has so many accidents because he's so clumsy.
You know,

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation. Put in the correct form of the verb. You may need to use *will* or *would*.

- Matthew: I haven't forgotten your birthday, you know. If you like, (►) *I'll book* (I / book) a table for Thursday at our favourite restaurant.
- Emma: My birthday is on Wednesday, Matthew. You're playing basketball then, aren't you? If you cared for me, (1)..... (you / not / play) basketball on my birthday.
- Matthew: What's the difference? If (2)..... (we / go) out on Thursday, it'll be just the same. If (3)..... (I / not / play), I'd be letting the team down.
- Emma: Yes, I suppose (4)..... (it / be) a disaster if you missed one game. Well, if (5)..... (you / think) more of your friends than you do of me, you can forget the whole thing.
- Matthew: I just don't understand you sometimes, Emma.
- Emma: If (6)..... (you / think) about it, you'd understand. And I think (7)..... (it / be) better if we forgot all about my birthday.
- Matthew: Don't be silly, Emma. If you get into one of your bad moods, (8)..... (it / not / do) any good.
- Emma: If you were interested in my feelings, (9)..... (I / not / get) into a bad mood.

- Exercise 5:

What does the if-clause mean? Write a sentence with *isn't* or *might*.

- If this room was tidy, I could find things.

The room isn't tidy.

- If we're late tonight, we can get a taxi.

We might be late tonight.

1. If the phone was working, I could call you.

.....

2. If it rains, can you bring the washing in?

.....

3. If Mike was here, he'd know what to do.

.....

4. If this spoon was silver, it would be worth a lot.

.....

5. If Sarah calls, can you say I'll ring back?

.....

- Exercise 6:

Complete the conversation. Put in the correct form of the verb. Use the past perfect or *would have*.

Nick: United didn't play very well today.

Tom: We were awful. But if Hacker (►) *'ad taken* (take) that easy chance, (►) *we would have won* (we / win).

Nick: We didn't deserve to win. It (1)..... (be) pretty unfair if Rangers (2)..... (lose).

Tom: Hacker was dreadful. My grandmother (3)..... (score) if (4)..... (she / be) in that position.

Nick: And if Burley (5)..... (not / be) asleep, he (6)..... (not / give) a goal away.

Tom: If Johnson (7)..... (not / be) injured when we needed him most, (8)..... (it / be) different.

Nick: Yes, (9)..... (we / beat) them if (10)..... (he / be) fit.

- Exercise 7:

Comment on each situation using a type 3. conditional with *if*. Use *would have*, *could have* or *might have*.

► In a bookshop yesterday Daniel saw a book he really wanted. The only problem was that he didn't have any money. *Daniel would have bought the book if he had had any money.*

► Rita often goes to concerts at the town hall, although not to everyone. There was one on Saturday, but she didn't know about it. *Rita might have gone to the concert if she had known about it.*

1. On Sunday the guests had to have their lunch inside. Unfortunately it wasn't warm enough to have it outside.

.....

2. There was a bomb scare last Tuesday. Sarah wanted to fly to Rome, but she wasn't able to. The airport was closed.

.....

- i. Laura has only met Nick once, and it's possible she wouldn't recognize him. He passed her yesterday, but he had a crash-helmet on.
.....
- j. Sarah has been quite busy, and she hasn't watered her plants for some time. As a result, they've died.
.....
- k. Nick likes ice hockey, but he didn't have a ticket to the game last week, so unfortunately he wasn't able to get in.
.....

II - Exercise 8:

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of the verb. Use the past simple, the past perfect, *would*, or *would have*.

► Mike: You look tired.

Harriet: Well, if *you hadn't woken* (you / not / wake) me up in the middle of the night, *I wouldn't be* (I / not be) so tired.

1. Rita: Is Trevor a practical person?

Laura: Trevor? No, he isn't. If..... (he/be) practical,..... (he / put) those shelves up a bit quicker. It took him ages.

2. Tom: Why are you sitting in the dark?

David: Let's just say that if..... (I/ pay) my electricity bill last month,..... (I/ not be) in the dark now.

3. Matthew: Why are you so angry with me? All I did yesterday was play basketball.

Emma: If (you / love) me,..... (you / not / leave) me here all alone on my birthday.

BÀI 124:

OTHER CONDITIONAL SENTENCES
(Sự biến đổi trong câu điều kiện)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Match the sentences and join them with. Say what type they are

► I went to bed earlier.	I'll try to follow them.
1. The twins had worn different clothes.	You might not be warm enough.
2. You tell me what the instructions say.	I wouldn't have bought it.
3. People used public transport.	I wouldn't sleep.
4. You don't wear a sweater.	There'd be less pollution.
5. I hadn't seen the product advertised.	We could have told them apart.

► *If I went to bed earlier, I wouldn't sleep.*

type 2.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

📖 - Exercise 2:

Adam is a music student. He rents a room from Mr. Day. Put in the correct forms.

Mr. Day: Can't you stop playing that trumpet? You're making an awful noise. Adam: Well, if (►) *I don't practise* (I / not practise), I won't pass my exam.

Mr. Day: But why at night? It's half past twelve. If (1)..... (you / play) it in the daytime, (2)..... (I / not / hear) you because I'd be at work. If (3)..... (you / tell) me about this

trumpet when you first came here, (4)..... (I / not / let)
 you have the room. I'm afraid it's becoming a nuisance. If
 (5)..... (you / not / play) so loud, (6)..... (it /
 not / be) so bad.

Adam: I'm sorry, but you can't play a trumpet quietly.

Mr. Day: If (7)..... (I / realize) a year ago what you were going
 to do, then (8)..... (I / throw) you out long ago. If
 (9)..... (you / go) on making this noise at night,
 (10)..... (I / have) to complain to your college.

- Exercise 3:

What might you say in these situations? Use a conditional sentence.

- You think Emma should book a seat on the train. The alternative is having to stand.

If Emma doesn't book a seat on the train, she'll have to stand.

1. You didn't know how unpopular Jason was when you invited him to your party.

2. Warn your friend not to put too many tins into the plastic bag or it'll break.

3. You haven't got a pen, so you can't write down the address.

4. You should have started your project earlier. You're so far behind now.

5. Your friend might need some help. If so, tell her to give you a ring.

6. The automatic result of the door opening is the fan coming on.

- Exercise 4:

Complete the sentences using *unless* and the information in brackets.

- You won't get there in time *unless you hurry*. (if you don't hurry)

1. We can't have a picnic..... (if it isn't a nice day)
2. Don't leave the TV on..... (if you aren't watching it)

3. We can't do the job..... (if we don't get help)
 4. I wouldn't have bought the picture..... (if I didn't like it)

- Exercise 5:

Which word makes more sense? Put in *if* or *unless*.

- Rachel will be pleased *if* she passes her driving test.
 ► The bus won't stop *unless* you ring the bell.
 1. I can't read your letters..... you type them.
 2. Emma will be upset..... she doesn't get the job.
 3. You can't go into the reception..... you've got a ticket.
 4. Don't bother to ring me..... it's important.

- Exercise 6:

What could you say in these situations? Use *in case*.

- You think Vicky had better take a coat. It might get cold.
 You to Vicky: *You'd better take a coat in case it gets cold.*
 1. You think you and Mark had better book a table. The restaurant might be busy.
 You to Mark:
 2. You think Claire ought to insure her jewellery. It might get stolen.
 You to Claire:
 3. You'll leave David your phone number. He might want to contact you.
 You to David:

- Exercise 7:

Jake lives next door to Melanie. Complete their conversation. Put in *if*, *when* (x2), *unless* or *in case*.

Jake: A man is delivering a washing-machine this morning, but I have to go to work. I won't be here (►) *when* he calls. Could you let him in for me, please, (1)..... you're terribly busy?

Melanie: Oh, that's no problem.

Jake: Oh, thanks. (2)..... you could do that, I'd be really grateful. I'll leave a message on his answer phone. And (3)..... he doesn't get the message, I'll put a note on the door, just to make sure. He'll see it (4)..... he comes.

BÀI 125:

WISH and IF ONLY
(Câu điều kiện với wish và if only)

📖 - Exercise 1:

What might you say in these situations? Begin *I wish...*

- ▶ to someone who never answers your e-mails
I wish you'd answer my e-mails.
- ▶ to someone who makes rude remarks about you
I wish you wouldn't make rude remarks about me.

1. to someone who won't hurry up

.....

2. to someone who never does the washing-up

.....

3. to someone who isn't telling you the whole story

.....

4. to someone who blows cigarette smoke in your face

.....

5. to someone who won't tell you what he's thinking

.....

📖 - Exercise 2:

Vicky is fed up. What is she saying? Use *I wish* or *if only*.

- ▶ (She can't think straight.) *I wish I could think straight.*

1. (She is so tired.)
2. (She gets headaches.).....
3. (Her work isn't going well.).....
4. (She can't concentrate.).....
5. (Life is so complicated.).....

📖 - Exercise 3:

Complete the sentences. Use these words: *accepted, caught, found, played, saved, stayed*

► I spent all my money. I wish now that *I had saved it.*

1. I missed the train. I really wish
2. Rita left the party early. Nick wishes
3. Emma refused the offer. But her parents wish
4. I looked everywhere for the key. I wish
5. The injured player could only watch. He wishes

- Exercise 4:

Complete the conversation.

Claire: Oh, Henry. You're giving me another present. It's very sweet of you, but I wish (►) *you wouldn't give me* so many presents.

Henry: Claire, I've been thinking. I shouldn't have asked you to marry me. I wish now that (1).....

Claire: Now you're talking nonsense. I wish (2)....., Henry.

Henry: I'm not a young man, am I? Of course I wish (3).....

Claire: Why don't you listen? If only (4)..... to me just this once.

Henry: Why couldn't we have met twenty years ago? I wish (5)..... you then.

Claire: Henry, twenty years ago I was just starting school.

TEST 24

- Exercise 1:

Complete the news report about a protest against a new road. Put in the correct form of the verbs. Sometimes you need *will* or *would*.

Yesterday protesters managed to hold up work on the Oldbury bypass. Protest leader Alison Compton defended the action by members of the Green World group. 'If we don't protest, soon (►) *there'll be* (there / be) no countryside left: she told reporters. The bypass is now well behind schedule, and if the protesters had not held u the work so often, (1)..... (it / open) two months ago. 'If these fields (2)..... (disappear), we'll never see them again,' said Ms Compton. 'Why can't we use public transport? If more people (3)..... (travel) on buses and trail we wouldn't need new roads. If the motor car had never existed, the world (4)..... (be) a more pleasant place today'.

But many people in Oldbury want their new bypass. 'If (5)..... (they / not build) it soon, the traffic jams in the town will get worse: said Asif Mohammed, whose house is beside the busy A34. 'We just can't leave things as they are. If things remained the same, people's health

(6)..... (suffer) even more from all the pollution here. It's terrible. If we don't get the traffic out of the town, (7)..... (I / go) mad. If (8)..... (I/ know) earlier how bad this problem would get, (9)..... (I/ move) out years ago. But now it has become impossible to sell this house because of the traffic. The government waited too long. If (10)..... (they / do) something sooner, there would be less traffic today.' And the protest is making the new road even more expensive. 'If this goes on, (11)..... (there / not / be) enough money left to finish the road,' says the Transport Minister.

- Exercise 2:

Look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

- A: There's always something, going wrong with this car.
B: If you had any sense, you'd *have sold* it long ago.
a) be selling b) have sold c) sell d) sold
1. A: It's a pity the lake wasn't frozen yesterday.
B: Yes, it is. If it..... frozen, we could have gone skating.
a) had been b) was c) would be d) would have been
2. A: Haven't you got enough money for a holiday?
B: Oh yes. I've got some saved up..... I suddenly need it.
a) if b) in case c) that d) unless
3. A: What are you going to do next year?
B: I wish I..... the answer to that question.
a) knew b) know c) could know d) would know
4. A: These figures are too complicated to work out in your head.
B: Yes, if..... we had a calculator.
a) better b) only c) really d) that
5. A: What are you doing later this afternoon?
B: Oh..... the game finishes, I'll go home, I expect.
a) if b) in case c) unless d) when
6. A: Do you think I should take the job?
B: You shouldn't do anything..... you think it's the right thing to do.
a) if b) in case c) unless d) when

- Exercise 3:

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Begin with *If...*

- I haven't got a key, so I can't get in.

If I had a key, I could get in.

1. You talk about football and I'm going to be very bored.

.....

2. The baby didn't cry, so we had a good sleep.

.....

3. You may want a chat, so just give me a ring.
.....
4. Nigel hasn't got satellite TV, so he can't watch the game.
.....
5. You go away and I'll miss you.
.....
6. I'm not rich or I'd have given up working long ago.
.....
7. We should have bought that picture five years ago because it would be quite valuable now.
.....
8. Throw a stone into water and it sinks.
.....

- Exercise 4:

Write the sentences correctly.

- There aren't any eggs. If we have some eggs, ~~I could make an omelette.~~
If we had some eggs, I could make an omelette.
1. The weather doesn't look very good. ~~If it'll rain, I'll stay here.~~

 2. The programme is starting soon. ~~Can you tell me if it starts?~~

 3. Could you just listen? ~~I didn't need to repeat things all the time if you listened.~~

 4. It's a simple law of science. ~~If air will get warmer, it rises.~~

 5. There's only one key. ~~I'd better get another one made if I lose it.~~

 6. We were really late. ~~I wish we left home earlier.~~

 7. I hope the parcel comes today. ~~If it won't arrive today, we'll have to complain.~~

8. That radio is on loud. ~~I wish someone turns it down.~~

9. We must do something. ~~Until we act quickly, it'll be too late.~~

10. Of course Martin was angry. ~~But he hadn't been angry if you had damaged his stereo.~~

BAI 126:

BUT, ALTHOUGH and IN SPITE OF

(But, although và in spite of)

Exercise 1:

Complete each sentence with but and one of these clauses:

it didn't break, it's really quite modern, no one laughed, she turned it down

► I dropped the dish, *but it didn't break.*

1. The house looks old,
2. Emma was offered a job,
3. The joke was funny,

Exercise 2:

Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 1 using **although**.

► *Although I dropped the dish, it didn't break.*

1.
2.
3.

Exercise 3:

Put in **although** or **in spite of**

► My sister got the job, *although* she didn't expect to.

1. I told the absolute truth, no one would believe me.
2. Jim forgot his passport, having it on his list.
3. it was sunny, it was quite a cold day.
4. The goods were never delivered, the promise we had received.
5. Henry asked Claire to marry him, the fact that he's a lot older than her.

Exercise 4:

Complete the report by putting in the correct linking words. There is always more than one possible answer.

(►) *Although* the ground was very wet, it was decided to go ahead with United's game against City. United were 1-0 winners (1)..... not playing very well. (2)..... the poor conditions, City played some attractive football, (3)..... they just couldn't score. (4)..... they lost, their fans gave them a big cheer.

- Exercise 5:

Join each pair of sentences. Be careful where you put the words in brackets.

- Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health. (although)

Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.

- I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (despite)

I couldn't sleep despite being tired.

1. Trevor didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (even though)

.....

2. Henry doesn't know any Chinese. It was one of his school subjects. (although)

.....

3. Arthur's friend is a millionaire. He hates spending money. (despite)

.....

4. We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour. (in spite of)

.....

BÀI 127:

TO, IN ORDER TO, SO THAT and FOR
(To, in order to, so that và for)

📖 - Exercise 1:

Complete each sentence using *to* and these words: cash a cheque, finance her studies, go to sleep, hear the football results, look smart:

▶ Laura went to the bank *to cash a cheque*.

1. Mrs. Miles sometimes takes a pill
2. Jim turned on the radio.....
3. Just this once Mike is going to wear a suit.....
4. Janet is borrowing some money

📖 - Exercise 2:

Alan works for Zedco. He wants to succeed in business, so he is listening to a talk on the subject. Here is what the speaker is showing the audience.

ACTION

PURPOSE

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▶ study the market | → be more successful |
| 1. get to work earlier | → impress the boss |
| 2. work harder | → achieve more |
| 3. take risks | → be a winner |
| 4. think positively | → not miss any opportunities |

Say what Alan is going to do. Use either *in order to* or *so as to*. Both are correct.

▶ *He's going to study the market in order to be more successful.*

1.
2.
3.
4.

 - Exercise 3:

Comment on what each person says. Use the word in brackets.

- Ilona: I'm learning English. I want to get a better job. (to)
Ilona is learning English to get a better job.
- Claude: I study encyclopedias. Then I can answer quiz questions. (so that)
Claude studies encyclopedias so that he can answer quiz questions.
- Vicky: I'm saving up. I'm planning a holiday. (for)
Vicky is saving up for a holiday.
1. Nick: I keep a dog. It guards the house. (to)
.....
2. David: I'm going to be very careful. I don't want to have an accident (so that)
.....
3. Jessica: I'm going on a diet. I want to lose weight. (to)
.....
4. Trevor: I often switch off the heating. It saves money. (to)
.....
5. Sarah: I had to go to Birmingham. I had a business meeting. (for)
.....
6. Emma: I wore boots because I didn't get wet. (so that)
.....

BÀI 128:

REVIEW OF LINKING WORDS
(Ôn tập các liên từ)

I - Exercise 1:

Olivia Black's new CD is now available in the shops. Write the titles of her songs. Use these words instead of the ones in brackets: *as soon as, before, since, when, while, until*

► Think of me (during the time) I'm away.

CCB Think of me while I'm away.

• I'll love you (up to the day) I die.

.....
• I hear music (at the time) I see you.

.....
• Come back (earlier than) I forget you.

.....
• I've been sad (from the time) you left me.

.....
• I fell in love (immediately after) we met.

II - Exercise 2:

Put in these words: *although, because, but, if, in case, in order to, in spite of, so, so that, unless*

► Olivia booked a babysitter *so that* she could go out for the evening.

1. it was late, Nick didn't seem in a hurry to leave.

2. They put video cameras in shops..... stop people stealing things.

3. We decided not to go out for a meal..... we were simply too tired.

4. you're ready, we can start now.

5. Our room was very small,..... we didn't really mind.

5. No one was watching the television,..... I switched it off.

7. You can't drive a car..... you've got a licence.
 8..... having absolutely no talent, Guy became a popular TV personality and chat show host.
 9. I think my answers are right, but can I just check them with yours..... I've made a mistake?

- Exercise 3:

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct linking word.

Daniel: What are you going to do (►) after/before you finish college, Rachel?

Rachel: Vicky and I will be off to the States (1) as soon as/in spite of this term is over. We're going to travel around, and we may go to Canada (2) so that/to see some friends of Vicky's. We've been thinking about nothing else (3) since/until we bought our plane tickets.

Daniel: It sounds great. How are you getting around in the States?

Rachel: By Greyhound bus. I know it takes longer than flying, (4) but/in spite of it'll be more interesting. We fly to LA and then we're taking the bus to New York. We're going to buy a special ticket (5) in order/ so that we can go anywhere we like on the way.

Daniel: Yes, it's better by bus (6) because/ unless you can stop off at interesting places.

Rachel: Of course the bus will probably be tiring.

Daniel: Maybe you should take plenty of money (7) if/in case you decide to fly instead.

Rachel: I'll have to be careful with my money. I'm hoping to stay out there (8) unless/until I have to come back and start my job in September. I'm really looking forward to the trip, (9) although/because I'll be sad to leave here. And what about you? What are you doing this summer?

Daniel: I'd go away somewhere (10) if/in case I could afford to. But I'm working. I've got no money, (11) because/so I'll have to earn some. I

Rachel: Have you really got no money (12) although/in spite of the fact that you've had a part-time job this term?

Daniel: You know me, Rachel. If I've got money, I spend it.

TEST 25

This test will help you to find out which parts of the book you need to spend most time on. You don't have to do the whole test at once - you could do numbers 2. to 22. first to test your knowledge of verbs. Choose the correct answer - a), b), c) or d).

Some of the questions are quite difficult, so don't worry if you get them wrong.

This book was written to help you get them right in future!

Choose the correct answer - a), b), c) or d).

Words and sentences

1. We gave..... a meal.
a) at the visitors c) the visitors
b) for the visitors d) to the visitors

Verbs

2. I'm busy at the moment..... on the computer.
a) I work b) I'm work c) I'm working d) I working
3. My friend..... the answer to the question.
a) is know b) know c) knowing d) knows
4. I think I'll buy these shoes..... really well.
a) They fit c) They're fitting
b) They have fit d) They were fitting
5. Where..... the car?
a) did you park c) They're fitting
b) did you parked d) you parked
6. At nine o'clock yesterday morning we..... for the bus.
a) wait b) waiting c) was waiting d) were waiting

- When I looked round the door, the baby..... quietly.
 a) sleeping b) slept
 c) was sleeping d) were sleeping
- Here's my report..... it at last.
 a) finish b) I finished
 c) I'm finished d) I've finished
- He..... made some coffee. It's in the kitchen.
 a) was b) just c) never d) yet
- We..... to Ireland for our holidays last year.
 a) goes b) going c) have gone d) went
- Robert..... ill for three weeks. He's still in hospital.
 a) had been b) has been c) is d) was
- My arms are aching now because since two o'clock.
 a) I'm swimming b) I swam c) I swim d) I've been swimming
- I'm very tired..... over four hundred miles today.
 a) drive b) I'm driving
 c) I've been driving d) I've driven
- When Martin..... the car, he took it out for a drive.
 a) had repaired b) has repaired c) repaired d) was repairing
- Janet was out of breath because.....
 a) she'd been running c) she's been running
 b) she did run d) she's run
- Don't worry. I..... be here to help you.
 a) not b) shall c) willn't d) won't
- Our friends..... meet us at the airport tonight.
 a) are b) are going to c) go to d) will be to
- a party next Saturday. We've sent out the invitations.
 a) We had b) We have c) We'll have d) We're having
- I'll tell Anna all the news when..... her.
 a) I'll see b) I'm going to see
 c) I see d) I shall see
- At this time tomorrow..... over the Atlantic.
 a) we flying b) we'll be flying
 c) we'll fly d) we to fly
- Where's Robert?..... a shower?
 a) Does he have b) Has he c) Has he got d) Is he having

22. I..... like that coat. It's really nice.

- a) am b) do c) very d) yes

Questions, negatives and answers

23. What's the weather like in Canada? How often..... there?

- a) does it snow b) does it snows c) snow it d) snow:

24. Which team..... the game?

- a) did it win b) did they win c) won d) won

25. What did you leave the meeting early.....? - I didn't
very well.

- a) away b) because c) for d) like

26. Unfortunately the driver..... the red light.

- a) didn't saw b) didn't see c) no saw d) saw not

27. You haven't eaten your pudding..... it?

- a) Are you no want c) Don't want you

- b) Do you no want d) Don't you want

28. I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,.....?

- a) is it b) isn't it c) was it d) wasn't it

29. Are we going the right way? - I think.....

- a) indeed b) it c) so d) yes

Modal verbs

30 The chemist's was open, so luckily I..... buy some aspirin

- a) can b) can't c) did can d) was able to

31. Susan has to work very hard. I..... do her job, I'm sure.

- a) can't b) couldn't c) don't d) shouldn't

32. We had a party last night..... spend all morning clearing
the mess.

- a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I've must

33. There was no one else at the box office. I..... in a queue.

- a) didn't need to wait c) needn't have waited

- b) mustn't wait d) needn't wait

34..... I carry that bag for you? - Oh, thank you.

- a) Do b) Shall c) Will d) Would

35. I've lost the key. I ought..... it in a safe place.

- a) that I put b) to be putting c) to have put d) to put

The passive

36. We can't go along here because the road is.....
 a) been repaired b) being repaired c) repair d) repaired
37. The story I've just read..... Agatha Christie.
 a) was written b) was written by c) was written from d) wrote
38. Some film stars..... be difficult to work with.
 a) are said b) are said to c) say d) say to
39. I'm going to go out and.....
 a) have cut my hair c) let my hair cut
 b) have my hair cut d) my hair be cut

The infinitive and the ing-form

- 40 The driver was arrested for failing an accident.
 a) of report b) report c) reporting d) to report
41. Someone suggested for a walk.
 a) go b) going c) of going d) to go
42. I can remember..... voices in the middle of the night.
 a) hear b) heard c) hearing d) to hear
43. The police want..... anything suspicious.
 a) that we report b) us reporting
 c) us to report d) we report
44. We weren't sure..... or just walk in.
 a) should knock c) whether knock
 b) to knock d) whether to knock
45. It was too cold..... outside.
 a) the guests eating c) that the guests should eat
 b) for the guests to eat d) that the guests eat
46. Did you congratulate Tessa..... her exam?
 a) of passing b) on passing c) passing d) to pass
47. I didn't like it in the city at first. But now..... here.
 a) I got used to living c) I used to live
 b) I'm used to living d) I used to living
48. They raised the money simply..... for it. It was easy.
 a) asking b) by asking c) of asking d) with asking
49. As we walked past, we saw Nigel..... his car.
 a) in washing b) to wash c) wash d) washing

Nouns and articles (a/an and the)

50 I need to buy.....

a) a bread b) a loaf bread

c) a loaf of bread d) breads

51. My father is not only the town mayor, he runs..... too.

a) a business b) a piece of business

c) business d) some business

52. The..... produced at our factory in Scotland.

a) good are b) good is c) goods are d) goods is

53. I'm looking for..... to cut this string.

a) a pair scissors c) a scissors

b) a scissor d) some scissors

54. I was watching TV at home when suddenly..... rang.

a) a doorbell b) an doorbell c) doorbell d) the doorbell

55. I've always liked.....

a) Chinese food c) some food of China

b) food of China d) the Chinese food

56. In England most children go..... at the age of five.

a) school b) to school

c) to some schools d) to the school

57. We haven't had a holiday for..... time.

a) a so long b) so a long

c) such a long d) such long

58. Our friends have a house in.....

a) a West London c) West London

b) the West London d) West of London

This, my, some, a lot of, all, etc

59. It's so boring here. Nothing ever happens in..... place.

a) that b) these c) this d) those

60 Is that my key, or is it..... ?

a) the yours b) the your's c) your d) yours

61. Adrian takes no interest in clothes. He'll wear.....

a) a thing b) anything c) something d) thing

62. There's..... use in complaining. They probably won't do anything about it.
a) a few b) a little c) few d) little
63. I don't want to buy any of these books. I've got.....
a) all b) all them c) everything d) them all

Pronouns

64. Let's stop and have a coffee..... a cafe over there, look.
a) Is b) It's c) There d) The
65. Everyone in the group shook hands with.....
a) each other b) one other c) one the other d) themselves
66. The washing-machine has broken down again. I think we should get.....
a) a new b) a new one c) new d) new one
67. All the guests were dancing..... having a good time.
a) All were b) Every was
c) Everyone was d) Someone were

Adjectives and adverbs

68. The house was..... building.
a) a nice old stone c) a stone old nice
b) a nice stone old d) an old nice stone
69. The government is doing nothing to help.....
a) poor b) the poor
c) the poors d) the poor ones
- 70 The young man seems very.....
a) sensible b) sensibly c) sensibly d) sensibly
71. I..... missed the bus. I was only just in time to catch it.
a) mostly b) near c) nearest d) nearly
72. This detailed map is..... the atlas.
a) more useful as c) usefuller as
b) more useful than d) usefuller than
73. This place gets..... crowded with tourists every summer.
a) always more c) from more to more
b) crowded and more d) more and more

74. Yes, I have got the report..... it.
 a) I just am reading c) I'm reading just
 b) I'm just reading d) Just I'm reading
75. I've read this paragraph three times, and I understand it.
 a) can't still b) can't yet c) still can't d) yet can't
76. We're really sorry. We regret what happened.....
 a) a bit b) much c) very d) very much

Prepositions

77. The village is..... Sheffield. It's only six miles away.
 a) along b) by c) near d) next
78. You can see the details..... the computer screen.
 a) at b) by c) in d) on
79. I've got a meeting..... Thursday afternoon.
 a) at b) in c) on d) to
- 80 We've lived in this flat..... five years.
 a) ago b) already c) for d) since
81. This car is..... if you're interested in buying it.
 a) for sale b) in sale c) at sale d) to sell
82. Polly wants to cycle round the world. She's really keen.....
 the idea.
 a) about b) for c) on d) with

Verb with prepositions and adverbs

83. I prefer dogs..... cats. I hate cats.
 a) from b) over c) than d) to
84. My father used the money he won to set..... his own company.
 a) forward b) on c) out d) up
85. Don't go too fast. I can't keep..... you.
 a) on to b) on with c) up to d) up with

Reported speech

86. Someone..... the tickets are free.
 a) said me b) said me that c) told me d) told to me
87. Last week Justin said "I'll do it tomorrow." He said he would do it.....
 a) the following day c) tomorrow
 b) the previous day d) yesterday

18. I don't know why Nancy didn't go to the meeting. She said he..... definitely going.

- a) be b) is c) was d) would

19. The librarian asked us..... so much noise.

- a) don't make b) not make
c) not making d) not to make

Relative clauses

20. What's the name of the man..... gave us a lift?

- a) he b) what c) which d) who

21. What was that notice.....?

- a) at that you were looking c) you were looking at it
b) you were looking at d) which you were looking

22. Susan is the woman..... husband is in hospital.

- a) her b) hers the c) whose d) whose the

23. York..... last year, is a nice old city.

- a) I visited b) that I visited
c) which I visited d) whom I visited

24. The accident was seen by some people..... at a bus stop

- a) waited b) waiting
c) were waiting d) who waiting

Conditionals and wish

25. If..... my passport, I'll be in trouble.

- a) I lose b) I'll lose c) I lost d) I would lose

26. I haven't got a ticket. If..... one, I could get in.

- a) I'd have b) I had c) I have d) I've got

27. If..... the bus to the airport hadn't been so late, we the plane.

- a) caught b) had caught
c) would catch d) would have caught

28. If only people keep sending me bills!

- a) don't b) shouldn't c) weren't d) wouldn't

99. I just had to take the dog out..... of the awful weather.

- a) although b) despite
c) even though d) in spite

100 Anna put the electric fire on..... warm.

- a) for getting b) in order get c) so she gets d) to get

KEY TO THE EXERCISES

Bài 1

Exercise 1

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. noun | 9. preposition |
| 2. determiner | 10. linking word |
| 3. verb | 11. adverb |
| 4. pronoun | 12. determiner |
| 5. adverb | 13. adjective |
| 6. pronoun | 14. noun |
| 7. verb | 15. linking word |
| 8. adjective | 16. noun |

Exercise 2

Verb: is, love

Noun: Nancy, café

Adjective: wonderful, old, romantic

Adverb: madly, unfortunately, rather

Preposition: of, for, at

Determiner: a, their, some

Pronoun: He, her, they

Linking word: and, but, so

Exercise 3

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. verb | 2. noun |
| 3. adjective | 4. verb |
| 5. adjective | 6. verb |
| 7. verb | 8. noun |
| 9. verb | 10. noun |

Bài 2

Exercise 1

1. subject
2. verb
3. adverbial

4. complement

5. object

6. complement

Exercise 2: 1e, 2a, 3c, 4d

Exercise 3:

1. Kevin likes volleyball.
2. Daniel had an accident.
3. We moved the piano.
4. Paul is a tall man.
5. Everyone sat on the floor.
6. Jason's friends gave him some help.

Exercise 4

1. also, with several young people
2. first, in 1994
3. naturally, without help
4. fortunately, from the National Lottery

Bài 3

Exercise 1

1. Fiona gave Tommy a sweater.
2. Mark gave Georgia a tennis racket.
3. Jim gave Daisy a necklace.
4. Cindy gave Harriet a scarf.

Exercise 2

1. sold her necklace to her friend.
2. told the joke to all his friends.
3. gave her neighbour some help.
4. wrote his teacher a letter.

Exercise 3

1. for
2. to
3. to
4. for
5. for
6. to

Exercise 4

1. you my umbrella.
2. them to the police.

3. me a job.
4. them to the bottle bank.
5. it to the cat.

Bài 4

Exercise 1

1. painting a picture.
2. taking a photo.
3. carrying a parcel.
4. riding a bicycle.

Exercise 2

1. are trying
2. are you finding
3. is helping
4. We're/ We are getting
5. We aren't spending
6. It isn't taking
7. are you waiting
8. I'm/ I am correcting

Exercise 3

1. it's/ it is raining.
2. you're/ you are sitting on my coat.
3. I'm/ I am watching 'Neighbours'.
4. I'm/ I am working.
5. I'm/ I am writing an important letter.

Bài 5

Exercise 1

1. a feeling
2. a thought
3. a repeated action
4. a repeated action
5. a fact
6. a fact
7. a feeling
8. a thought
- 9.

Exercise 2

1. love
2. don't own
3. doesn't eat
4. wins
5. don't look
6. doesn't speak
7. walk
8. needs
9. doesn't work
10. don't like

Exercise 3

1. I go
2. comes
3. we travel
4. don't you come
5. doesn't make
6. do you take
7. I love
8. does it cost
9. I don't know
10. that doesn't matter
11. I don't want
12. Does that annoy
13. it doesn't annoy
14. find

Bài 6

Exercise 1

1. He's/ He is taking
2. I think
3. they're/ they are discussing
4. Are you looking
5. Do you know
6. works
7. She doesn't work
8. You know
9. I give
10. she gives

11. She lives
12. It saves
13. I agree
14. I'm/ I am wasting

Exercise 2

1. I'm/ I am writing, I promise
2. rises, we're/ we are travelling
3. I'm/ I am writing, I write
4. she's/ she is going, she drives
5. I start, I'm/ I am starting
6. It's/It is snowing, It's/It is coming.

Exercise 3

1. do you always go
2. He's/ He is always missing
3. he always takes
4. I always forget
5. he's always talking

Bài 7**Exercise 1**

1. state
2. action
3. state
4. action
5. state

Exercise 2

1. I think
2. I have
3. it didn't fit
4. I see
5. you're having
6. you're thinking
7. I come
8. It weighed

Exercise 3

1. 're being/ are being
2. 's/ is
3. are being
4. 'm/ am
5. 's being/ is being

Exercise 4

1. I think it's going to be perfect for me.
2. It uses so much petrol.
3. It's too expensive to buy.
4. And I've still got a chance to win.
5. I play it every weekend.

Bài 8:**Exercise 1**

1. She swam in the sea.
2. She had a picnic.
3. She played volleyball.
4. She went out dancing.

Exercise 2:

1. were
2. started
3. saw
4. called
5. tried
6. was
7. arrived
8. fought
9. brought
10. entered
11. found

Exercise 3:

1. We didn't try
2. did you see
3. I didn't know
4. did you go
5. I didn't like
6. did Susan enjoy
7. I didn't want

Bài 9**Exercise 1**

1. were watching television
2. were dancing in the street
3. was driving his taxi

4. was writing an essay

Exercise 2:

1. were you doing
2. I was taking
3. She was coming
4. I was going
5. You weren't looking
6. you were going

Exercise 3:

1. I was making phone calls all evening.
2. I was waiting in the rain for half an hour.
3. I was making sandwiches all afternoon.
4. I was sitting in a traffic jam for two hours.
5. My neighbour was playing loud music all night.

Bài 10

Exercise 1

1. He sat down on a chair while I was painting it.
2. As he was running for a bus, he collideded with a lamppost.
3. His hair caught fire when he was cooking chips.
4. When he was holding a beautiful vase, he suddenly dropped it.
5. He was sitting in the garden when a wasp sting him on the nose.

Exercise 2

1. We lost
2. it came
3. was coming
4. went
5. fell
6. were playing
7. I was working

8. I lost

9. I got

10. did

Exercise 3

1. The train was waiting when we arrived at the station.
2. I was reading a library book when I found a £20 note in it.
3. Karen had an electric shock when she touched the wire.
4. When the doors opened, the crowd rushed in.
5. When the campers woke, they saw that the sun was shining.

Bài 11

Exercise 1

1. She's/She has repaired it.
2. I've/I have opened the window.
3. They've/ They have arrived.
4. He's/He has moved it.
5. We've/We have watched all these.

Exercise 2

1. He's/ He has broken his leg.
2. They've/They have built a house.
3. They've/They have seen a film.
4. She's/She has caught a fish.

Exercise 3

1. I haven't done
2. hasn't made
3. You haven't put
4. I've/I have hurt
5. you've/ you have had
6. have you put

7. It's/It has disappeared
8. I've/I have looked
9. have you done
10. I've/I have painted
11. I've/I have cleaned
12. We've/We have made
13. has that brush gone
14. you've/you have left

Bài 12

Exercise 1:

1. just tidied it.
2. He's/He has just made some/it.
3. I've/I have just eaten it.
4. she's/she has just checked them.
5. I've/I have just rung him.

Exercise 2:

1. I haven't started it yet.
2. I've/I have just seen Andrew
3. He's/he has already done
4. I haven't finished my plan yet.
5. You've/You have already begun
6. We've/We have already spent
7. I haven't done any real work yet
8. I've/I have just realized
9. I've/I have just decided

Exercise 3:

1. He hasn't had any fun for a long time.
2. He's/He has had a cold for a week.
3. He hasn't seen his friends for ages.
4. He hasn't done any sport since last year.
5. He's/He has been busy with his studies for months.

Exercise 4:

1. rung her since
2. seen them for
3. watched one for
4. had one since

5. played (it) since

Bài 13

Exercise 1:

1. have arrived
2. repaired
3. She's/ She has lost
4. has started
5. ran
6. earned
7. They planted
8. have gone
9. has turned
10. She phoned
11. I've/ I have made
12. broke

Exercise 2:

1. The train drivers have gone on strike. They stopped work(ing) at twelve o'clock.
2. The Queen has arrived in Toronto. She flew there in an RAF aircraft.
3. Two men have escaped from Parkhurst Prison. They got away during the night.
4. The actor Howard Bates has died in a car accident. His car crashed into a wall.
5. Linda Jones has won the women's marathon. She ran it in 2 hours 27 minutes.

Exercise 3:

1. haven't taken a photo since
2. weeks since I last saw
3. was the last time we played
4. haven't eaten anything for

Exercise 4:

1. has stood
2. was
3. stayed

4. 've/have lived
5. 've/have known
6. were

Exercise 5:

1. b
2. b
3. a

Exercise 6:

1. this, last
2. today, yesterday
3. last, this
4. this, yesterday

Exercise 7:

1. What's/What has happened
2. He's/He has had
3. He fell
4. broke
5. did it happen
6. told
7. You know
8. you didn't tell
9. I didn't see
10. I haven't seen
11. He's/ He has had
12. He did

Bài 14

Exercise 1:

1. have you been doing
2. She's/She has been helping
3. have you been studying
4. I've/I have been trying
5. it's/it has been getting

Exercise 2:

1. they've/they have been arguing
2. he's/he has been cooking
3. he's/he has been driving
4. He's/He has been waiting

Exercise 3:

1. Brian has been swimming for an hour.
2. My friends have been travelling (around the world) for two months.
3. Jack has been working for ten hours.
4. Mary and Vicky have been talking for forty minutes.
5. How long have you been reading the/tha/your book?

BÀI 15

Exercise 1:

1. 's/has left, He's/ He has been cleaning, he's/he has finished
2. I've/ I have been working, You've/You have done
3. I've/ I have heard, have you been doing, We're/We have done

Exercise 2:

1. How many miles have walked?
2. How long have they/the workmen been digging up the road?
3. How many photos have taken?
4. How long has it been raining?

Exercise 3:

1. I've/I have been clearing
2. I've/I have found
3. You've/You have been sitting
4. I've/I have been watching
5. You've/You have been

6. I've/I have had
7. They've/They have been
8. I've/I have never had

Bài 16

Exercise 1:

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. b

Exercise 2:

1. The train had just gone.
2. The rain had stopped
3. I'd/I had forgotten my ticket.
4. They'd/They had stolen it a week before.
5. I hadn't seen her for ages.
6. I'd/ I had just cleaned it.
7. I'd/I had already eaten my sandwiches.

Exercise 3:

1. had left
2. 've/have finished
3. 've/have eaten
4. 'd/had ordered
5. 've/have made
6. had told
7. 'd had/ had had
8. 's/has started
9. 've/have turned
10. 'd/had made

Bài 17:

Exercise 1:

1. I'd/I had working
2. I hadn't been looking
3. she'd/she had been dealing
4. I'd/I had been waiting
5. I'd/I had been reading

Exercise 2:

1. She'd/She had been crying
2. He'd/He had been driving too fast.
3. They'd/They had been playing with matches.
4. He's/He had been standing under a tree.

Exercise 3:

1. had been watching
2. 'd/had been playing, hadn't won
3. 'd/had been walking, 'd/had walked
4. 'd/had stopped, was smoking
5. has been aching
6. was lying, 'd/had bought, 'd/had been reading

Bài 18

Exercise 1

1. decision
2. future
3. decision
4. future
5. decision

Exercise 2

1. I'll carry the/ your bag (for you).
2. I'll have (the) chicken (, please).
3. I'll answer it/ the phone.
4. I'll shut the window.

Exercise 3

1. Cindy won't do any work.
2. Anna will study all weekend.
3. Fiona will be annoyed.
4. Arthur won't put up the shelves.
5. Susan's party will be fun.
6. Jack will watch the match.

Exercise 4

1. will
2. Shall
3. will
4. will

5. will
6. shall

Bài 19**Exercise 1**

1. 'll video
2. 'm going to see
3. 'll switch
4. 's/ is going to read

Exercise 2

1. she's/ she is going to get married.
2. aliens will land on the earth in the next five years.
3. It's/ It is going to attack us/ me.
4. I'm/ I am going to look round the museum.

Exercise 3

1. We're/ We are going to build
2. will be/ is going to be
3. will like/ are going to like
4. will be/ are going to be
5. We aren't going to cut/ We won't cut
6. We're/ We are going to have
7. will be/ is going to be
8. We're/ We are going to stop OR We will stop

Bài 20**Exercise 1**

1. future
2. future
3. present
4. future
5. present

Exercise 2

1. She's/She is working on Friday.
2. She's/She is flying to Cairo on 15 June.

3. He's/He is seeing his boss at four o'clock this afternoon.
4. They're/They are playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.

Exercise 3

1. I'm/I am going
2. He's/He is staying
3. gets
4. are you doing
5. I'm/I am going
6. finishes
7. we're/we are going

Exercise 4

1. 's/is about to win
2. are to go
3. is to visit
4. 're/are about to move
5. are to take

Bài 21**Exercise 1**

1. I'll/I will be earning
2. I'll/I will be doing
3. will you be doing
4. I'll/I will be giving
5. who'll/who will be doing
6. you'll/you will be playing

Exercise 2

1. I'll/I will be seeing her
2. I'll/I will be going there next summer
3. I'll/I will be playing (it/badminton) next weekend.
4. I'll/ I will be having lunch/it in the canteen tomorrow. Or I'll/I will be having lunch/it there tomorrow.

Exercise 3

1. Will you be going to the library today?
2. Will you be writing to Cindy soon?
3. Will you be using your calculator this afternoon?
4. Will you be seeing Henry tomorrow?
5. Will you be driving to the festival?
6. Will you be pinning your sister soon?

BÀI 22

Exercise 1

1. I'll/I will have had
2. I'll/I will have been the subject of a TV documentary
3. I'll/I will have become world-famous
4. I'll/I will have made millions of pounds from my pictures

Exercise 2

1. twenty
2. She will/She'll have travelled two hundred miles.
3. He will/He'll have done a/one hundred and fifty (press-ups).

Exercise 3

1. were going to go
2. was going to pick
3. were going to see

Exercise 4

1. I was going to paint the door, but I didn't feel very well.
2. I was going to repair the lamp, but I forgot.
3. I was going to wallpaper the bedroom, but I didn't have time.

BÀI 23

Exercise 1

1. She's/She has got a map. OR She has a map.
2. He hasn't got an umbrella. OR He doesn't have an umbrella.
3. They've/They have got a rabbit. OR They have a rabbit.
4. They haven't got a car. OR They don't have a car.

Exercise 2

1. Has ... got
2. hasn't got
3. didn't have
4. didn't have
5. haven't got

Exercise 3

1. played
2. drinks
3. spent
4. received

Exercise 4

1. we're/we are having
2. you've/you have got OR you have
3. it hasn't got OR it doesn't have
4. Did you have
5. I had
6. Have you got OR Do you have
7. have
8. I didn't have

BÀI 24

Exercise 1

1. It's a difficult problem.
2. I've seen the results.
3. I don't have any information.
4. We haven't reached a decision.
5. I'm very excited about it.
6. You needn't decide now.

7. It isn't yet certain. OR It's not yet certain.
8. We'll be pleased to see you.
9. Don't worry.
10. I'd like to buy a new computer.
11. We're willing to help.
12. We won't know the result for some time.

Exercise 2

1. Where's, It's
2. don't, isn't OR 's not
3. What's, He's

Exercise 3

1. I would like a coffee, please.
2. There has been an accident.
3. That is correct.
4. I had seen the film before.
5. Who has got the key?
6. We would have stopped if we had seen you.

Bài 25

Exercise 1

1. I am smiling.
2. I do like my new portrait.
3. It is foggy today.
4. Yes, I did remember the water.

Exercise 2

1. it did cost
2. you do look
3. it does stop
4. I did go
5. they do quarrel

Exercise 3

1. I did finish the crossword today.
2. my room does need tidying up.
3. I do find the work difficult.
4. I did want to give the course up.
5. Do have a chocolate.
6. this place does depress me.

Bài 26

Exercise 1

1. do you live now
2. Are you married?
3. How long have you been married?
4. Do you have (any) children?
5. How old are they?
6. What does your wife do?
7. Does she like her job?

Exercise 2

1. How is cheese made?
2. When was the computer invented?
3. Why isn't Sue working today?
4. What time are your friend coming?
5. Why was the concert cancelled?
6. Where was your mother born?
7. Why didn't you come to the party?
8. How did the accident happen?
9. Why doesn't this machine work?

Exercise 3

1. Can't you drive, Melanie?
2. Won't you be at the disco, Rachel?
3. Haven't you got/Don't you have a television, Nick?

Exercise 4

1. Don't you feel well? OR Aren't you feeling well?
2. Haven't they arrived yet?
3. Didn't she say hello?
4. Can't you swim?

Bài 27**Exercise 1**

1. offering
2. making a suggestion
3. asking for information
4. requesting
5. inviting
6. asking for information
7. asking permission

Exercise 2

1. Are you a rich man?
2. Are quizzes your only hobby?
3. Did you work hard at school?
4. Have you got/Do you have any other interests?
5. Is it an interesting life?
6. Does your wife ask you quiz questions?
7. Do you answer questions in your dreams?

Exercise 3

1. Are you going to America?
2. Does Anna play tennis?
3. Did you enjoy your holiday?
4. Shall we (both) go for a walk?
5. Will you be at the club tonight?
6. Is the train on time?
7. Do Henry and Jane go camping?
8. Could I/Can I/May I borrow your squash racket?
9. Have you got/Do you have a motor bike?

Bài 28**Exercise 1**

1. Yes, I can
2. Yes, it is
3. No, he hasn't
4. Yes, I did

5. No, they aren't

6. Yes, I do

7. No, he isn't

8. No, I haven't

Exercise 2

1. No, we won't

2. Yes, I did

3. Yes, she has

4. No, I didn't

5. Yes, she does

6. No, we aren't

7. No, we can't

8. No, I'm/I am not

Exercise 3

1. b

2. b

3. b

4. a

5. b

6. a

7. b

8. b

Bài 29**Exercise 1**

1. What's/What is the date (today)?
2. When does the course finish?
3. Who have you invited (to your party)?
4. How can I/we get tickets (to the concert)?
5. Where are we going to have lunch?
OR Where shall we have lunch?

Exercise 2

1. Where
2. How many
3. When
4. Who
5. What
6. How far

7. How often
8. What kind
9. How long

Exercise 3

1. where do you record
2. How many programmes have you done?
3. How much money do you earn?
4. When did you start acting?
5. What are your plans for the future?

Bài 30**Exercise 1**

1. a) Rita b) Rita
2. a) Paul b) a bus
3. a) a/the lorry
- b) a/the car

Exercise 2

1. Who is/Who's having a party?
2. What were you reading?
3. What have you learnt?
4. what should we do?
5. Who is/Who's looking for me?
6. Who are you looking for?
7. What is she planning?
8. Who has /Who's moved in next door?
9. What is/What's worrying you?
10. Who do you want to meet?

Exercise 3

1. photos can I keep?
2. flowers look lovely?
3. (money) went missing?
4. house did you pass (earlier)?
5. children has the doctor got?/does the doctor have?
6. (money) do doctors earn?
7. uncle has died?
8. wife is coming (later)?

Bài 31**Exercise 1**

1. neither am I
2. Neither can I
3. so am I
4. so do I
5. Neither have I
6. so would I

Exercise 2

1. neither does Emma.
2. so has Emma.
3. neither can Mark.
4. neither is Melanie.
5. so does Emma.
6. so does Claire.

Exercise 3

1. I don't expect so
2. I suppose so
3. I hope not
4. I don't think so
5. I'm afraid not

Bài 32**Exercise 1**

1. a comment
2. a comment
3. a question
4. a question

Exercise 2

1. isn't it?
2. are there?
3. aren't you?
4. didn't you?
5. don't they?
6. can't we?
7. was it?

Exercise 3

1. don't you?
2. haven't I?
3. aren't you?

4. do you?
5. does it?
6. is there?
7. can you?

Exercise 4

1. Let's listen to some music, shall we?
2. Don't do anything silly, will you?
3. You haven't got a train timetable, have you?
4. Pass me the salt, can you?/could you? OR You couldn't pass me the salt, could you?

Bài 33

Exercise 1

1. She can't play the violin.
2. He can climb trees.
3. She can juggle.
4. They can't lift the weights.

Exercise 2

1. I can walk (Also possible: I'm able to walk)
2. I can go/I'll be able to go
3. to be able to get
4. been able to do

Exercise 3

1. c
2. a

Exercise 4

1. was able to
2. could
3. could/was able to
4. were able to
5. couldn't/wasn't able to

Bài 34

Exercise 1

Can, could and may are all possible.

1. Can I borrow your calculator?

2. May I join you?
3. Could I look at your notes?

Exercise 2

1. You can have a picnic.
2. You can't drop litter.
3. You can turn left.
4. You can't play ball games/football.
5. You can't smoke.

Exercise 3

1. I wasn't allowed to have
2. we're/we are allowed to have
3. we're/we are allowed to do
4. we'll/we will be allowed to hold

Exercise 4

1. Am I allowed to
2. May I
3. Am I allowed to
4. Am I allowed to
5. May I

Bài 35

Exercise 1

(May and might are both possible.)

1. she might be
2. She may be
3. She might be sitting
4. She may be having
5. You might find
6. She might know

Exercise 2

1. He may/might win.
2. I may/might have one.
3. We may/might get one.
4. She may/might be late.
5. They may/might be visiting me.

Exercise 3

1. mightn't
2. mightn't
3. couldn't
4. couldn't

5. mightn't

Exercise 4

1. can't
2. must
3. might
4. can't
5. might
6. must

Bài 36

Exercise 1

1. I had to pay, did you have to pay
2. You have to slam, You'll have to fix
3. do you have to take, I'll have to take
4. We had to move, We didn't have to look, We've/ We have had to do
5. has to start, does he have to get

Exercise 2

1. You must get to work on time.
2. has to keep his dog under control.
3. You must listen carefully.
4. visitors have to report to the security officer.

Exercise 3

1. must
2. has to
3. have to
4. must
5. have to
6. must
7. must

Bài 37

Exercise 1

1. must, mustn't, needn't
2. mustn't, must
3. mustn't, needn't
4. mustn't, must, needn't

Exercise 2

1. didn't have to wait ages to cross the road.
2. don't have to work long hours.
3. doesn't have to work in a factory.
4. didn't have to lock their doors.
5. don't have to wash their clothes by hand.

Exercise 3

1. we didn't need to borrow any money.
2. I needn't have bothered.
3. We needn't have left/We didn't need to leave so early
4. I didn't need to pay to go in
5. you needn't have tipped/you didn't need to tip the waiter

Bài 38

Exercise 1

1. shouldn't
2. ought
3. should
4. shouldn't
5. should
6. oughtn't

Exercise 2

1. We'd better wait (for Rachel).
2. You'd better lock it/lock your bike.
3. I'd better tidy my rooms.
4. You'd better not drive/We'd better not go too fast
5. We'd better do some revision.

Exercise 3

1. I'm/I am supposed to take two before meals.
2. They're/They are supposed to report to the police.
3. You're/You are supposed to stand in a queue.
4. They aren't supposed to watch it.

Exercise 4

1. We had/We'd better hurry. (Also possible: We should hurry./We ought to hurry.)
2. We had/We'd better not be OR We oughtn't to be/We shouldn't be
3. should arrive/ought to arrive
4. You shouldn't take/You oughtn't to take
5. We aren't supposed to get

BÀI 39

Exercise 1

1. Can I have a fork, please?
2. Could I have a towel, please?
3. Would you mind answering the phone?

Exercise 2

1. must
2. have
3. like
4. want
5. Can/Could
6. Would
7. wonder
8. Can/Could

Exercise 3

1. Can I have a receipt, please?/Can you give me a receipt, please?
2. Could you tell me the time, please?
3. Can you help me, please?
4. Could I have a bag, please?/Could you give me a bag, please?

5. Would you mind clearing a space (on the table), please?
6. Could I speak to the manager, please?

BÀI 40

Exercise 1

1. Shall we stop for a minute?
2. Would you like a game?
3. I'll post that letter for you.

Exercise 2

1. Shall
2. Shall
3. could
4. Would
5. Will
6. Would

Exercise 3

1. Would you like a cup of tea? OR Will/Won't you have a cup of tea?
2. What shall/can/should I say in my letter?
3. Let's have/We could have a cup of coffee. OR Shall we have a cup of coffee?
4. I'll/I can walk home with you. OR Shall/Can I walk home with you?
5. Would you like to visit me one weekend? (Also possible: Will/Won't you visit me one weekend?)

BÀI 41

Exercise 1

1. will
2. won't
3. would
4. will
5. would
6. wouldn't

7. would

Exercise 2

1. will help
2. wouldn't let
3. will give
4. won't go
5. would like
6. wouldn't open
7. won't stand

Exercise 3

1. Shall we go to the swimming-pool?
2. I won't take any risks.
3. I'd/I would like a shower (, please).
4. You shouldn't decide in a hurry.
5. (I think) the world will end in the year 3000.

Bài 42

Exercise 1

1. Dinner is being served.
2. Some houses are being built.
3. The seals are being fed.
4. A flag is being raised.

Exercise 2

1. is owned
2. was being used
3. was bought
4. hadn't been looked
5. has been done
6. is used

Exercise 3

1. will be done/are going to be done
2. will ... be called
3. can't be bought
4. should be sold

Exercise 4

1. got hurt
2. get lost
3. get broken
4. got divorced

Exercise 5

1. swept
2. burst
3. were rescued
4. received
5. reached
6. were blocked
7. were brought
8. is being done
9. said

Exercise 6

1. my brother
2. The water
3. terrorists
4. the alarm
5. The guide
6. The dog

Exercise 7

1. was won by Claude Jennings.
2. did a parachute jump last week.
3. been attacked by a bull.
4. being built.
5. likes Jessica.
6. been thrown away.
7. been kidnapped by Martians
8. was seen by five people.

Exercise 8

1. was taken
2. was done
3. was interviewed by a very nice young police officer
4. fingerprints were found (by detectives)
5. burglar was identified (by the police computer).
6. has been arrested
7. (he) is being questioned
8. jewellery hasn't been found

Exercise 9

- didn't produce many cars for sale.
- production was started by a German called Karl Benz.
- is now seen as the father of the motor car.

Exercise 10

- People should use them/bicycles for short journeys.
- someone has discovered a new source of energy?
- they're/they are going to knock it down/knock down this building.
- you shouldn't keep them/eggs in a freezer.
- people put it/litter in the bin?

Unit 43

Exercise 1

- New employees are given special training.
- Extra payments are given to staff who perform well.
- Most employees are offered company shares.
- All Zedco staff are allowed six weeks' holiday.
- A full salary is paid to women who leave to have children.

Exercise 2

- expected that the soap opera 'Round the Corner' will end next year.
- It is supposed that the footballer Wayne Johnson is earning £10 million a year.
- It is believed that Prime Minister and his wife have separated.

Exercise 3

- is expected to end next year.

2. The footballer Wayne Johnson is supposed to be earning £10 million a year.
3. The Prime Minister and his wife are believed to have separated.

BÀI 44

Exercise 1

1. had his car repaired.
2. is having her photo taken.
3. had his windows cleaned.
4. is having her eyes tested.

Exercise 2

1. David (has) had his arm bandaged.
2. Daniel is going to have his tooth filled.
3. Laura is having her photos developed.

Exercise 3

1. did you get your arm bandaged, David?
2. did you get your tooth filled, Daniel?
3. did you get your photos developed, Laura?

Exercise 4

1. Tom had his car stolen from outside his house.
2. Rita had her rent increased by ten per cent.
3. David has had his electricity cut off.

BÀI 45

Exercise 1

1. He is afraid of being sent away.
2. He doesn't want to be misunderstood.
3. He hopes to be offered a job.
4. He doesn't mind being paid low wages at first.
5. He is willing to be re-trained.

6. He would like to be given a chance.

Exercise 2

1. being used
2. working
3. to be treated
4. to give
5. to be invited
6. being taken

Exercise 3

1. to write
2. to be tidied
3. hovering/to be hoovered
4. to do
5. ironing/to be ironed
6. to finish
7. missing
8. to be handed
9. to be
10. being told

Bài 46

Exercise 1

1. Anthony promised to put up the shelves/to put the shelves up (soon).
2. Alice decided to buy both the dresses.
3. Susan offered to cook the meal.
4. Thomas threatened to shoot Nick's dog/the dog.

Exercise 2

1. They seem to believe
2. it seems to have improved
3. She doesn't seem to like
4. He seems to be working
5. He doesn't seem to have made
(Also possible: He seems not to have made)

Exercise 3

1. to hang
2. to come

3. to be having
4. to invite
5. to take
6. to have left

Bài 47

Exercise 1

1. I've/I have given up trying
OR I gave up trying
2. I can't imagine being
3. I enjoy watching it on TV.
4. suggested having a party.

Exercise 2

1. can't stand lying
2. couldn't/can't resist having
3. couldn't face doing
4. can't help feeling

Exercise 3

1. trying
2. walking
3. ringing
4. waiting
5. getting
6. changing
7. missing
8. discussing

Bài 48

Exercise 1

1. to get
2. to leave
3. staying
4. sitting
5. touring
6. to go
7. to hire
8. driving
9. to spend
10. taking

Exercise 2

1. taking
2. losing
3. to insist
4. arguing
5. to be
6. to repair
7. waiting
8. to have
9. to accept
10. saying

Exercise 3

1. I don't mind asking to see the manager.
2. John admitted promising to go to Scotland.
3. the band happened to finish playing.

Bài 49**Exercise 1**

1. I'd like to buy this tin.
2. I like driving this car.
3. I'd like to see the manager.
4. I like chasing rabbits.

Exercise 2

1. he loves watching/to watch
2. I wouldn't like to work
3. I'd like to see
4. I'd prefer to come/go
5. I hate queuing
6. He doesn't like cooking
7. I'd love to fly
8. I like to have

Exercise 3

1. to drive/driving
2. to make
3. to go/going
4. to search

Bài 50**Exercise 1**

1. mentioning
2. agreeing
3. to call
4. to lock
5. to lock
6. looking
7. to look

Exercise 2

1. running
2. to make
3. spending
4. watching
5. to work
6. to tell
7. to disappoint
8. phoning
9. to explain
10. going

Exercise 3

1. Nancy didn't even try to move the piano.
2. John will never forget seeing a spaceship.
3. The walls need painting.
4. Christina didn't mean to be unkind to Jessica.
5. Justin went on studying through the night.
6. Mike stopped to make a phone call.

Bài 51**Exercise 1**

1. Guy invited Susan to come on his chat show.
2. Cindy reminded Martin to get the theatre tickets.
3. The dentist told Tony to give up eating sweets.

4. The police ordered the **gunman** to come out with his hands up.

Exercise 2

1. don't want her to do a **parachute jump**
2. doesn't want him to fall in love with her
3. would like/'d like her to go (on holiday) with them

Exercise 3

1. The police must stop the suspects leaving the country.
2. The President didn't expect Congress to oppose him.
3. The terrorists forced the hostages to lie down.
4. The government doesn't mind the pound falling in value.

Exercise 4

1. to travel
2. buying
3. to use
4. to take

Bài 52

Exercise 1

1. He can't think what to say.
2. They're not sure/They aren't sure where to go.
3. She doesn't know how to stop.

Exercise 2

1. what to expect
2. where to go
3. how to find
4. what to do
5. who to contact

Exercise 3

1. whether to do
2. how much (money) to spend
3. whether to join

4. which route to take
5. which (lottery numbers) to choose

Bài 53

Exercise 1

1. simple to use the **computer**.
2. difficult to **understand the handbook**.
3. It's easy to run **any kind of software**.
4. It's absolutely fascinating to explore the world of **Complex**.
5. Are you ready to try the ultimate computer experience?

Exercise 2

1. is very simple to use.
2. isn't difficult to **understand**.
3. Any kind of **software** is easy to run.
4. The world of **Complex** is absolutely fascinating to explore.

Exercise 3

1. it's/it is likely to be pretty crowded.
2. she's/she is certain to be there.
3. you're/you are unlikely to find it. OR you'll be unlikely to find it.

Exercise 4

1. of
2. for
3. of
4. of
5. for

Bài 54**Exercise 1**

1. (just) can't wait for it to arrive.
2. It would be a mistake for him to marry her.
3. It's important for advertisements to tell the truth.

Exercise 2

1. There's a fun pool for children to swim in.
2. There are quite areas for you to relax in.
3. There are regular shows for you to enjoy.
4. There's a giant roller-coaster for you to ride on (if you dare)

Exercise 3

1. It's/It is too high for her to reach.
2. It's/It is too difficult for us to understand.
3. It wasn't loud enough for them/everyone to hear.
4. It wasn't hot enough for him to drink.

Exercise 4

1. difficult for the town to attract new industry.
2. very generous of the council to give the land to Sanko.
3. is eager for production to begin soon.

Bài 55**Exercise 1**

1. have something to eat.
2. nice to have a rest.
3. wants Jane to speak to him.
4. Daniel doesn't know how to repair the video.

5. Claire and her sister have decided to go to Bali.
6. Melanie has gone to the hospital to visit David.
7. (Unfortunately) Vicky has to do some studying.
8. It's important for Sarah to ring the office.

Exercise 2

1. see/read
2. drive/go
3. cry/weep
4. lie/sit/stay
5. snow
6. see/visit

Exercise 3

1. to visit
2. to see
3. to have
4. buy
5. to read
6. read
7. feel
8. look
9. get
10. to leave
11. to change
12. forget
13. to get

Bài 56**Exercise 1**

1. of buying
2. for breaking
3. on buying
4. like arguing

Exercise 2

1. blamed Trevor for forgetting the tickets.

2. succeeded in saving the driver's life.
3. The customers complained about not receiving the goods
4. Emma has accused Matthew of breaking his promise.
5. Melanie is insisting in cooking a meal for David.
6. A new traffic scheme has stopped cars from going into the town centre.
7. Everyone congratulated Claude on winning the quiz competition.
8. Some football fans were arrested for attacking a policeman.

Exercise 3

1. about seeing
2. about/at getting
3. on traveling
4. for not writing
5. from doing
6. like writing
7. with doing
8. off/about going

Bài 57

Exercise 1

1. of falling
2. of dropping them
3. to move

Exercise 2

1. Nick was afraid to jump.
2. Daniel was afraid to argue with the policeman.
3. Matthew is afraid of getting sunburnt.

Exercise 3

1. to buy
2. of getting
3. of being

4. to read

5. to book

Exercise 4

1. about being so rude
2. about losing my temper
3. to interrupt you

Bài 58

Exercise 1

1. We used to like
2. used to be
3. we didn't use to have
4. did you use to help
5. I used to look

Exercise 2

1. 's/is used to flying planes.
2. used to play badminton.
3. 's/is used to climbing mountains.

Exercise 3

1. to living
2. to stop
3. to work
4. to be
5. to drinking
6. to being
7. to have

Bài 59

Exercise 1

1. by staying up all night.
2. on walking (in the morning).
3. without using a calculator.
4. for carrying the food.
5. in spite of having it on his list.
6. as well as doing the typing.

Exercise 2

1. before signing
2. after eating

1. Before leaving
2. after using
3. before changing
4. before opening

Exercise 3

1. He thought carefully before deciding to buy it.
2. He bought the shop despite having little money of his own.
3. He became successful by giving the customers what they wanted.
4. He put the profit back into the business instead of spending it on himself.
5. He was happy when running his own business.
6. He fell ill as a result of working too hard.
7. He has made a lot of money since buying his first shop ten years ago.

Bà 60

Exercise 1

1. I saw him take it.
2. I watched him leave (the restaurant).
3. I heard him drive away.

Exercise 2

1. I can hear it ringing.
2. I can see her waving.
3. I can hear them barking.
4. I can smell it burning.

Exercise 3

1. She felt the building shake.
2. He heard people shouting.
3. She could hear an alarm ringing.
4. They saw the police arrive.
5. He saw a woman crying.

Bà 61

Exercise 1

1. broke his leg skiing.
2. cut his finger opening a tin.
3. injured her toe running.
4. hurt his back lifting weights.

Exercise 2

1. Taking a gun out of the drawer, he put it in his briefcase. (Also possible: Having taken a gun ...)
2. Having left the office, he (then) had to wait a while for the lift.
3. Reaching the ground floor, he hurried outside to a taxi. (Also possible: Having reached the ground floor ...)
4. Pulling out a gun, the taxi driver shot Mitchell. (Also possible: Having pulled out a gun ...)

Exercise 3

1. Having studied the map, Trevor knew which way to go.
2. Feeling cold, Harriet turned on the heating.
3. Not knowing French, Daniel found it hard to communicate.
4. Having finished the book, Andrew took it back to the library.

Bà 62

Exercise 1

1. uncountable
2. countable
3. countable
4. uncountable
5. uncountable
6. uncountable
7. countable
8. countable

Exercise 2

1. some biscuits
2. a light bulb
3. some wine
4. some mineral water
5. a banana
6. some soap
7. a lemon
8. some butter
9. some eggs

Exercise 3

1. a computer
2. essays
3. hours
4. many
5. money
6. food
7. much
8. a job
9. some
10. a few
11. pictures

Bài 63**Exercise 1**

1. a jar of jam
2. a box of matches
3. two loaves of bread
4. a bar of chocolate
5. five kilos of potatoes
6. a box/packet of breakfast cereal
7. two bottles of mineral water
8. a tube of toothpaste

Exercise 2

1. some
2. some
3. some
4. a
5. some
6. some

7. a

8. some

Exercise 3

1. beautiful scenery
2. good weather
3. a meal
4. fun
5. an awful journey

Bài 64**Exercise 1**

- 1 a vegetable.
- 2 's a bird./is a bird.
- 3 It's a flower.
- 4 It's a (very) tall building.
- 5 are planets.
- 6 They are rivers.
- 7 a footballer.
- 8 was a playwright/a writer/a poet.
- 9 He was a scientist/a physicist.
- 10 She was a film-star/an actress.

Exercise 2

- 1 a typist/a secretary.
- 2 is a travel agent.
- 3 is a nurse.
- 4 She is a mathematics teacher.
- 5 She is a film director.

Exercise 3

- 1 a
- 2 an
- 3 x
- 4 X
- 5 some/X
- 6 X
- 7 a

- 8 X
- 9 Some

2. four weeks' pay
3. a minute's rest
4. five hours' sleep

Bài 65**Exercise 1**

1. that man's jacket
2. the top of the page
3. Charles's daughter
4. the cause of the problem
5. my father's birthday
6. the children's toys
7. the cost of a new computer
8. our neighbours' garden
9. the ground floor of the building
10. Don and Mary's children
11. the government's economic policy OR the economic policy of the government
12. Catherine's husband
13. the husband of the woman talking to Liz
14. Mike's parents' car
15. Amy's friend's wedding

Exercise 2

1. a boy's name
2. children's clothes
3. a girl's school
4. a bird's nest
5. a woman's magazine

Exercise 3

1. week's storm caused a lot of damage
2. town's only movie theater has closed down
3. Japan's exports to the United States have fallen recently.
4. The region's main industry is tourism.

Exercise 4

1. a year's salary

Bài 66**Exercise 1**

1. thanks
2. damages
3. pain
4. belongings
5. saving
6. goods
7. damage
8. savings
9. pains

Exercise 2

1. mathematics/maths
2. history
3. athletics
4. economics
5. geography

Exercise 3

1. are
2. is
3. were
4. seem
5. is
6. was
7. were

Exercise 4

1. was
2. outskirts
3. headquarters
4. savings
5. damage
6. aren't
7. crossroads
8. is
9. gives

Bài 67**Exercise 1**

1. a tennis-racket/a tennis racket
2. a television camera
3. an alarm clock
4. a motor cycle
5. a luggage trolley

Exercise 2

1. Have you got any cotton shirts?
2. What shall I do with this lemonade bottle?
3. Have you got a shopping bag?
4. Is there a shoe shop near here?
5. I'd like a corner table, please.
6. I'll need some climbing boots.
7. Are you a computer operator?

Exercise 3

1. a stone wall
2. a tourist information centre
3. a bath-towel/a bath towel
4. working clothes
5. a city centre office block
6. a sales graph
7. a credit card
8. a horse-race/a horse race
9. the Marketing Director
10. a weekend bicycle tour

Bài 68**Exercise 1**

1. a
2. the
3. a
4. the
5. The
6. the
7. the
8. a
9. The
10. the

11. the

12. the

13. the

14. a

15. the

16. the

17. an

18. the

19. the

20. the

Exercise 2

1. Matthew won the race easily.
2. Suddenly a child ran into the road.
3. She was watching a film on television.
4. The bus was half an hour late.
5. The camera videoed the thief.

Exercise 3

1. a, the, the
2. a, the, a
3. the, the
4. a, the, The
5. a, the
6. a, the
7. a, the

Exercise 4

1. an, the
2. The, a
3. The, an
4. an, the
5. a, the
6. the, a

Exercise 5

1. a DJ
2. a VIP
3. an IRA member
4. a PC

5. an LA suburb
6. a UFO
7. an AGM
8. an MP

Bài 69**Exercise 1**

1. some luggage
2. some flowers
3. a cat
4. some birds
5. some fruit

Exercise 2

1. a
2. One
3. One
4. a

Exercise 3

1. A violin is a musical instrument.
2. A queue is a line of people.
3. An atlas is a book of maps.
4. A spade is a tool for digging.

Exercise 4

1. some nuts
2. mineral water
3. some clothes
4. lovely bread
5. (university) students

Bài 70**Exercise 1**

1. the biggest hotel
2. richest man
3. the worst accident
4. the cheapest restaurant
5. the hottest (day)

Exercise 2

1. the
2. The, the
3. the

4. X, the
5. X, the
6. a

Exercise 3

1. X
2. The
3. X
4. the
5. the, the

Bài 71**Exercise 1**

1. Lake Michigan
2. Italy
3. The Andes
4. The United Kingdom
5. Tasmania
6. the West Indies
7. The River Nile
8. Brussels
9. the North

Exercise 2

1. the Thames
2. Hyde Park
3. Heathrow Airport
4. Trafalgar Square
5. Westminster Bridge
6. the Houses of Parliament
7. Buckingham Palace
8. West London
9. The M1 motorway
10. The Ritz

Exercise 3

1. New York
2. the Statue of Liberty
3. Central Park
4. the Metropolitan Museum of Art
5. Broadway
6. Macy's
7. Washington Square

8. New York University
9. the Paramount
10. Broadway

Exercise 4

1. the Little Theatre
2. Kingston House
3. Wood Lane
4. the High Street
5. the Royal Hotel

Exercise 5

1. is in George Street.
2. The Odeon Cinema is in the Avenue.
3. The Clarendon Art Gallery is in Newton Lane.
4. King Edward College is in College Road.
5. St John's Church is in South Street.
6. Webster's department store is in the High Street.
7. The Bristol Hotel is in Westville Way.

Exercise 6

1. A day at Blenheim Palace
2. A train journey in North Wales
3. A tour of the White House
4. A beach on the Riviera
5. A shopping trip to Harrods
6. A small town in France
7. A trip across the Severn Bridge
8. A walk around Lake Windermere
9. A visit to Tower Bridge
10. A journey across the Rockies
11. A look around the National Gallery
12. A boat trip along the Oxford Canal

Bàì 72

Exercise 1

1. a very grand hotel
2. quite a tiring journey
3. a really big flat
4. quite a nice meal

Exercise 2

1. so
2. such
3. such
4. so
5. such
6. so

Exercise 3

1. The piano was so heavy (that) Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
2. Tom was so annoyed about United losing (that) he wouldn't speak to anyone.
3. The band was such a big attraction (that) all the tickets sold out.
4. Vicky had such a lot of work to do (that) she was sure she'd never finish it.
5. The party made such a (lot of) noise/so much noise (that) it kept all the neighbours awake.

Exercise 4

1. what
2. What a
3. What

Bàì 73

Exercise 1

	Near	Further away
Singular	this	that
Plural	these	those

Exercise 2

1. these flowers
2. this parcel
3. those trees
4. that dog

Exercise 3

1. That
2. these
3. this
4. this
5. those
6. that
7. This
8. this, that
9. These

Bài 74

Exercise 1

1. our
2. his
3. his
4. their
5. yours
6. mine
7. hers
8. her

Exercise 2

1. it's
2. its
3. it's
4. its

Exercise 3

1. the
2. my
3. your, your
4. the (Also possible: her)
5. their

Exercise 4

1. They've got their own pool.
2. I'd like my own room.

3. They've got their own garden.

4. It's a favourite hobby of mine.

5. Emma introduced me to a friend of hers.

Bài 75

Exercise 1

1. the boy's bike
2. the girls' tent
3. the children's skateboards
4. the girl's cat
5. the boys' trophies

Exercise 2

1. The Terrorist's Airplane
2. The Smell of Meat
3. The policeman's Advice
4. The Middle of the Day
5. The Owner's Money
6. The Front of the House

Exercise 3

1. This month's prices
2. (a) fifteen minutes' rest
3. yesterday's paper
4. a three hours' drive

Bài 76

Exercise 1

1. She's/She has got some cats.
2. He hasn't got any petrol.
3. He's/He has got some poison.

Exercise 2

1. any
2. any
3. some
4. some
5. some
6. any

Exercise 3

1. some, anything
2. someone, any/some

3. anyone (Also possible: someone), any
4. something, some

Exercise 4

1. anyone
2. any bus
3. any colour
4. anything
5. any day

Bài 77**Exercise 1**

1. She hasn't had many lessons yet.
2. I'll have to make a lot (of it).
3. I haven't got much energy.
4. Maybe you should add a little water/a few drops of water.
5. We've invited lots of friends/a lot of friends.

Exercise 2

1. a lot of
2. many/a lot of
3. many
4. a lot of
5. much/a lot of
6. many/a lot of
7. much

Exercise 3

1. few
2. little
3. a little
4. a few
5. little
6. a few

Exercise 4

1. much
2. little
3. much
4. many
5. few

6. little

Bài 78**Exercise 1**

1. Some of them
2. most of them
3. Half of them
4. All of them
5. some of them
6. None of them

Exercise 2

1. She got some of them right.
2. He got most of them right.
3. He got all of them right.
4. She got more of them right.

Exercise 3

1. most people
2. No student/No students
3. Most of the money
4. All cars
5. All fruit/Most fruit
6. All (of) the lights

Bài 79**Exercise 1**

1. each
2. each/every
3. every
4. each/every
5. every

Exercise 2

1. all day/the whole day
2. all night/the whole night
3. every morning
4. all morning/the whole morning
5. all day/the whole day

6. every time

Exercise 3

1. One of them has a separate restaurant.
2. Both of them serve bar snack.
3. One of them has a family room.
4. Neither of them allows/allow pub games.
5. Neither of them has/have live music.
6. One of them has a non-smoking area.

Exercise 4

1. Neither
2. either
3. each (Also possible: every)
4. every
5. whole

Bài 80

Exercise 1

1. the dress
2. Laura
3. the jeans
4. Rita
5. Rita and Melanie
6. Rita
7. Mike and Harriet
8. Tom

Exercise 2

1. he
2. them
3. us/me
4. her
5. she
6. she
7. them
8. she
9. They
10. you

11. him

12. he

13. you/we

14. him

Exercise 3

1. We
2. you, us
3. it, it, her, She
4. Me, it
5. she, her
6. I, you, them, they

Exercise 4

1. You
2. They
3. You
4. they

Bài 81

Exercise 1

1. There's/There is a balloon in the sky.
2. There are some boxes on the car.
3. There's/There is an elephant in the garden.

Exercise 2

1. There's/There is, There'll be
2. are there, There's/There has been
OR There was
3. there was, There ... have been

Exercise 3

1. It was very cheap.
2. It was Vicky.
3. It's/It is a nuisance.
4. It's/It is very warm.
5. It's/It is a important to keep it somewhere safe.

Exercise 4

1. There
2. It

3. There, It
4. there, it
5. It, there, It, there

Bài 82**Exercise 1**

1. 's/is looking at herself (in the mirror).
2. 're/are introducing themselves.
3. He's/He is teaching himself Arabic.
4. She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).

Exercise 2

1. yourself
2. ourselves
3. itself

Exercise 3

1. you
2. him
3. himself
4. her
5. yourself

Exercise 4

1. feel
2. help yourselves
3. remember
4. worry
5. relax

Bài 83**Exercise 1**

1. He cleans them himself.
2. I bake it myself.
3. They grow them themselves.
4. We decorated it ourselves.
5. He types them himself.
6. I develop them myself.

Exercise 2

1. herself

2. itself
3. himself
4. themselves
5. yourselves

Exercise 3

1. They're/They are always thinking about each other.
2. They've/They have got lots of photos of each other.
3. They enjoy each other's company.
4. They're/They are crazy about each other.

Exercise 4

1. each other
2. each other
3. themselves
4. ourselves
5. themselves
6. each other

Bài 84**Exercise 1**

1. a smart one or a casual one, a casual one
2. a big one or a small one, A big one
3. A white one or a brown one, A brown one
4. an ordinary one or an electric one, an ordinary one

Exercise 2

1. I haven't got one.
2. I must get some new ones.
3. Have you seen this one?
4. I've hired one.

5. Can't you find any nice ones?
6. The one in the car is better.

Exercise 3

1. one
2. it
3. one
4. them
5. some

Bài 85

Exercise 1

1. everyone/everybody, no one/nobody
2. someone/somebody, something
3. somewhere, Someone/somebody
4. everywhere, nothing

Exercise 2

1. someone
2. anyone
3. somewhere
4. anywhere
5. anything
6. something

Exercise 3

1. his
2. it
3. likes, they
4. has, their

Exercise 4

1. I once met someone famous.
2. Someone's car is blocking me in.
3. I've got something else/something different to tell you.
4. We know everyone's opinions/opinion.
5. Everyone else except you is going.
6. Nothing exciting ever happens here.

Bài 86

Exercise 1

1. modern chairs
2. a black cat
3. solar power
4. classical music
5. an old car
6. a tall building

Exercise 2

pleasant, ideal, quiet, short, popular, lovely, friendly, helpful, good, marvellous, excellent, local

Exercise 3

1. The world is asleep
2. My chief desire
3. My heart is content
4. The main thing to remember
5. The night is alive
6. Inner secrets
7. The only girl for me

Bài 87

Exercise 1

1. a small white car
2. an attractive old building
3. an expensive wooden garden seat
4. a famous Italian opera singer

Exercise 2

1. a lovely old glass vase
2. an attractive wall mirror
3. a modern office desk
4. red metal kitchen chairs
5. a splendid old model boat
6. valuable Australian postage stamps
7. a small wooden coffee table

Exercise 3

1. This is a powerful Japanese business computer.

2. This is an excellent small electric fire.
3. This is a big new chocolate bar.
4. This is a terrific American television comedy.
5. These are stylish aluminium garage doors.
6. These are wonderful modern sports shoes.
7. This is a very good German mobile phone.

Bài 88**Exercise 1**

1. the hungry
2. the homeless
3. the sick
4. the unemployed
5. the old

Exercise 2

1. We live near a special school for the deaf.
2. The old soldiers were holding a service for the dead.
3. The government should do more for the poor.
4. I'm doing a course on caring for the mentally handicapped.

Exercise 3

1. The sick
2. the young people
3. the unemployed
4. the poor
5. the old people
6. The homeless
7. the deaf

Bài 89**Exercise 1**

1. exhausted

2. interested
3. fascinating
4. exciting

Exercise 2

1. surprised
2. disappointing
3. puzzled
4. confusing
5. bored
6. interesting

Exercise 3

1. relaxing
2. annoyed
3. amused
4. interested
5. fascinating
6. thrilling
7. exhausting

Bài 90**Exercise 1**

1. brightly
2. patiently
3. immediately
4. punctually
5. secretly
6. safely
7. fluently
8. carefully
9. quietly

Exercise 2

1. angrily
2. happily
3. automatically
4. publicly
5. enthusiastically
6. reasonably
7. securely

Exercise 3

1. United won the game easily.
2. I've/I have checked the figures carefully.
3. Your dog barked at me very fiercely.
4. It's/It is raining quite heavily (here).

Exercise 4

1. dark
2. terribly
3. badly
4. suddenly
5. quietly
6. unhappy
7. sadly
8. curious
9. foolishly

Bài 91**Exercise 1**

1. adjective
2. adjective
3. adverb
4. adjective
5. adverb
6. adverb

Exercise 2

1. hardly
2. nearly
3. long
4. late
5. fast
6. hard
7. wrong
8. straight

Exercise 3

1. bad
2. good
3. badly

4. well

5. ill

Exercise 4

1. badly
2. good
3. fast
4. long
5. hardly
6. nearly
7. hard
8. lately
9. likely

Bài 92**Exercise 1**

1. are more interesting
2. is higher
3. is more beautiful

Exercise 2

1. richest
2. most modern
3. greatest
4. more exciting
5. most popular
6. most successful
7. most attractive
8. happiest

Exercise 3

1. happier
2. faster
3. more helpful
4. lovelier
5. bigger
6. more restful
7. more modern

Exercise 4

1. more smartly
2. longer
3. more often
4. more carefully

5. earlier
6. louder/more loudly

Exercise 5

1. worst
2. better
3. worse
4. best
5. furthest

Exercise 6

1. least
2. less
3. more
4. Most

Exercise 7

1. happier
2. smallest
3. best
4. shorter
5. most important
6. older
7. more exciting
8. most
9. wetter
10. lower
11. worse

Bài 93**Exercise 1**

1. The church is older than library.
2. Matthew is stronger than Daniel.
3. Harriet is taller than Mike.
4. Claire is more popular than Andrew.
5. Mark's car is bigger than Sarah's.

Exercise 2

1. Friday is the busiest day
2. The Metropole is the nicest hotel in (the) town.

3. This watch is one of the cheapest (watches) you can buy.
4. This Beatles album is the best (one) they ever made.
5. Alan is the most successful salesman in the company.

Exercise 3

1. Plastic isn't as strong as metal.
2. The stool isn't as comfortable as the armchair.
3. Swimming isn't as exciting as surfing.
4. The post isn't as quick as e-mail.

Exercise 4

1. me
2. I am
3. me
4. he has

Bài 94**Exercise 1**

1. less painful
2. less busy
3. less convenient
4. less attractive
5. less seriously
6. less optimistic

Exercise 2

1. Yesterday was a lot colder than today.
2. My coat is a bit longer than is fashionable.
3. I left work slightly earlier than usual this afternoon.

- The shop is much more expensive than the supermarket.
- Is the new machine any more reliable than the old one?

Exercise 3

- more and more difficult
- more and more complicated
- more and more
- longer and longer
- worse and worse

Exercise 4

- the quieter the roads (are).
- the wider the choice (is).
- the more confused I get.
- the more fluently you can speak.
- the more crowded the beaches get.

Bài 95

Exercise 1

- outside
- Perhaps
- always
- Obviously
- silently
- hard

Exercise 2

- mid
- end
- front
- mid
- mid
- mid
- end
- front
- mid
- mid

Exercise 3

- clearly crossed
- will probably rain

- didn't fully understand
- are usually
- occasionally visited it/visited it occasionally
- were soon working
- has obviously forgotten

Exercise 4

- It usually rains when David is on holiday.
- Rita's friend visits her most weekend.
- Mark gets a pay rise every year.
- Rachel never checks her work.

Exercise 5

- I've always known your secret.
- We certainly can't afford a new car. (Also possible: Certainly we can't afford a new car.)
- The tourists didn't walk far.
- Tom cut the paper carefully./Tom carefully cut the paper.
- Natasha can also play the violin. (Also possible: Natasha can play the violin also.)
- I read the newspaper most days./Most days I read the newspaper.

Exercise 6

- peacefully at his home
- through the streets yesterday
- to Greece last year
- there in June

Exercise 7

- We had a lovely time in the country.
- We arrived home safely at about eight.
- You must come and visit us before too long. (Also possible:

Before too long you must come and visit us.)

4. It's always nice to see you and Tony.
5. Maybe you'll be able to come in the New Year./You'll be able to come in the New Year maybe. (Also possible: You'll maybe be able to come in the New Year.)
6. We'll see you sometime.

Bài 96

Exercise 1

1. still, yet
2. still, already
3. yet, still

Exercise 2

1. I already owe Anna £30.
2. We've already spent all our money./We've spent all our money already.
3. But it still looks dirty. (Also possible: But it looks dirty still.)
4. We haven't seen them yet. (Also possible: We haven't yet seen them.)
5. I still can't understand the rules.

Exercise 3

1. They/Children don't play there any more.
2. they/boats still come along the river
3. it/the view isn't beautiful any more
4. it's/it still our home (Also possible: it's/it is our home still)

Exercise 4

1. no longer
2. yet
3. any more

4. already

Bài 97

Exercise 1

1. She's very busy.
2. She's a bit thirsty.
3. He's very strong.
4. He's extremely happy.

Exercise 2

1. very
2. quite
3. a bit
4. very
5. a bit
6. quite

Exercise 3

1. That radio is a bit loud.
2. I quite like my new job.
3. Why don't you slow down a little?
4. The rain completely spoilt our day./The rain spoilt our day completely.
5. We did the job fairly quickly.
6. I feel a lot better now.
7. We enjoyed the concert very much. (Also possible: We very much enjoyed the concert.)
8. My arms ached terribly.

Exercise 4

1. absolutely
2. really
3. very much
4. extremely
5. very
6. totally
7. very

Bài 98**Exercise 1**

1. quite
2. late
3. easy
4. quite
5. bright

Exercise 2

1. rather better
2. rather noisy
3. rather/quite busy
4. quite popular

Exercise 3

1. It's/It is rather/quite complicated.
2. My car is quite big.
3. it went on rather longer than I expected.
4. I made it quite quickly.

Exercise 4

1. completely ridiculous
2. fairly difficult
3. completely different
4. fairly surprised
5. fairly useful
6. completely certain

Bài 99**Exercise 1**

1. The plane is too low.
2. The gate isn't wide enough.
3. The water isn't warm enough.

Exercise 2

1. sweet enough.
2. too expensive.
3. enough rain,
4. clearly enough.
5. too many mistakes.
6. too much traffic.

7. too complicated.

8. enough food

Exercise 3

1. It's too wet for a picnic/too wet to have a picnic.
2. I/We haven't got enough chairs for all my/our guests.
3. I had too much equipment to carry.
4. (I think) Natasha is good enough to be a professional musician.

Bài 100**Exercise 1**

1. up
2. in/inside
3. above/over
4. along (Also possible: down)
5. by/beside/next to
6. around/round
7. in front of
8. away from/out of

Exercise 2

1. behind, through, below
2. past, down, opposite

Exercise 3

1. opposite
2. between
3. opposite
4. between
5. next to

Exercise 4

1. under
2. up
3. on
4. around
5. into
6. out of

Exercise 5

1. to

2. outside
3. in/into
4. past/by
5. off
6. on
7. through
8. near
9. among

Bài 101**Exercise 1**

1. He's/He is on the roof.
2. They're/They are at the disco.
3. He's/He is in the bath.
4. She's/She is at the lights.

Exercise 2

1. at the petrol station
2. at the zoo
3. in the theatre
4. in the restaurant
5. at the station

Exercise 3

1. in
2. on
3. in
4. at
5. at
6. at
7. on
8. on
9. in
10. at

Bài 102**Exercise 1**

1. In 1961.
2. On 22 November 1963.
3. At 12.30.

Exercise 2

1. ✕

2. on
3. ✕
4. in
5. at
6. on
7. in
8. in
9. on
10. at

Exercise 3

1. in time
2. on time
3. in time
4. on time

Exercise 4

1. at, on
2. at, in
3. on, in
4. in, in

Bài 103**Exercise 1**

1. since
2. for
3. since
4. for

Exercise 2

1. He's/He has been in bed for three days.
2. They've/They have been in the garden since breakfast.
3. He's/He has been at his desk since nine o'clock.
4. She's/She has been on the road for five hours.

Exercise 3

1. since four o'clock
2. ten years ago

3. since Monday/ since then
4. for six weeks
5. for three years
6. eight months ago
7. for three weeks

Exercise 4

1. before
2. ago
3. before

Bài 104**Exercise 1**

1. while
2. while
3. during
4. while

Exercise 2

1. by
2. until
3. until
4. by
5. by

Exercise 3

1. as
2. like
3. as
4. like

Exercise 4

1. as
2. as if
3. as
4. as if

Exercise 5

1. By the time I arrived at your flat, you'd/you had left.
2. Rita went to the party with Tom, as you predicted.
3. I saw your sister while I was shopping in London.

4. You can keep the book until you've/you have finished it OR you finish it.

Bài 105**Exercise 1**

1. in
2. from
3. in
4. by
5. in
6. on
7. on
8. in
9. by
10. on
11. In
12. on, on

Exercise 2

1. I pay in cash?
2. the information up to date?
3. you drop the ball on purpose?
4. there anything (to watch) on television tonight?
5. you be here at the end of Judy?
6. nuclear power a good idea in your opinion?
7. your car for sale?
8. you approve of the plan on the whole?

Exercise 3

1. by
2. on
3. in
4. by
5. by

Bài 106**Exercise 1**

1. of

2. in
3. in
4. at (Also possible: in)

Exercise 2

1. damage to
2. way of
3. answer to
4. cause of
5. tax on
6. difficulty with
7. matter with

Exercise 3

1. with
2. of
3. of
4. for
5. with
6. for
7. of
8. between

Exercise 4

1. answers to all the (quiz) questions.
2. knowledge of French
3. desire for progress
4. difference between the (two) colours
5. preference for our/Zedco products

Bài 107**Exercise 1**

1. afraid of the dark.
2. bored with the video.
3. interested in computers.
4. surprised at/by the news.
5. proud of the/their victory.
6. annoyed with her/the children.
7. They're not/They aren't satisfied with their pay increase.

Exercise 2

1. for
2. at
3. at
4. for
5. at
6. to

Exercise 3

1. responsible for
2. ready for
3. aware of
4. similar to
5. full of
6. interested in
7. late for
8. famous for

Bài 108**Exercise 1**

1. at
2. after
3. into

Exercise 2

1. pay for
2. ask for
3. care about
4. caring for
5. suffering from
6. decided on
7. concentrate on
8. agree with

Exercise 3

1. relies on
2. deals with
3. feel like
4. reached
5. listening to
6. apologized for
7. believed in
8. laughing at

9. discuss

10. left

Exercise 4

1. to
2. to
3. to
4. about
5. of

Bài 169

Exercise 1

1. into
2. from
3. as
4. with/to
5. to
6. to
7. with

Exercise 2

1. prefer water to wine?
2. blaming Tom for the/his accident?
3. thank you for the/her present?
4. accuse him/the head teacher of murder?
5. provide you with towels? (Also possible: provide towels for you?)
6. invite you to her wedding?
7. congratulate them on the/their (great) victory?
8. pointed a gum at Melanie?

Exercise 3

1. about
2. of
3. to
4. to
5. about/of
6. about
7. about/of

Bài 110

Exercise 1

1. stay in
2. pay ... back
3. fall over
4. lie down
5. cut out
6. come back
7. get on
8. take ... back
9. go away
10. give away

Exercise 2

1. left out
2. sent out
3. throw away
4. put off
5. made up
6. go on/carry on

Exercise 3

1. picks ... up
2. put on/put ... on
3. ring ... up
4. hand in/hand ... in
5. written ... down
6. win back
7. wash up/wash ... up
8. look ... up
9. held up
10. mixing ... up

Bài 111

Exercise 1

1. She's picking litter./She's picking up litter.
2. They're digging the road up./They're digging up the road.
3. He's washing the plates up./He's washing up the plates.

4. She's plugging the television./She's plugging in the television.

Exercise 2

1. Nick says he's/he has given up smoking.
2. How did the accident come about?
3. I think Matthew and Emma have fallen out.
4. The problem isn't going to just go away.
5. The government is bringing in a new tax on computers.
6. Zedco want to set up a new sales office in Germany.

Exercise 3

1. sort out
2. taking over
3. fell through
4. fight off
5. fallen behind
6. step down
7. taken on
8. laying on

Bài 112

Exercise 1

1. completely
2. away/disappearing
3. continuing
4. from start to finish
5. aloud
6. disconnected
7. away/departing
8. becoming less
9. completely to the ground
10. from start to finish
11. to different people
12. increasing

13. wearing
14. stopping completely

Exercise 2

1. on, off
2. out, out
3. down, out
4. on, out

Exercise 3

1. try on
2. taking off
3. speak up
4. setting off

Bài 113

Exercise 1

1. down on
2. out into
3. up at
4. away from
5. through to
6. in from

Exercise 2

1. run out of
2. send away for
3. look/watch out for
4. look forward to
5. keep up with
6. put up with
7. get on with
8. go back on
9. get on to
10. go in for
11. cut down on
12. fall back on
13. get round to
14. make up for

Exercise 3

1. I get on (well) with Melanie/Melanie and I get on (well)

2. I might drop in on David.
3. I'll fit in with everyone else.
4. I can't catch up (with) Matthew.
5. The sunny weather is making up for last week.

Bài 114**Exercise 1**

1. she can't sleep.
2. he's/he has hurt his back.
3. She says she feels sick all the time.
4. He says he fell over and hurt himself.

Exercise 2

1. Stokeley Carmichael said (that) black is beautiful.
2. Galileo said (that) the earth moves round the sun.
3. Shakespeare said (that) all the world's a stage.
4. George Orwell said (that) Big Brother is watching you.

Exercise 3

1. tell
2. say
3. say
4. say
5. tell
6. tell
7. tell
8. say

Bài 115**Exercise 1**

1. Trevor
2. 1998
3. April
4. (about) two weeks

Exercise 2

1. you
2. he, your
3. he, you

Exercise 3

1. the day before/the previous day
2. that day
3. here
4. the week before/the previous week

Bài 116**Exercise 1**

1. was
2. was
3. is (Also possible: was)
4. was
5. was (Also possible: is)

Exercise 2

1. you had finished it/your project.
2. you weren't on a diet.
3. you didn't enjoy them/parties.
4. you weren't applying for its/the job.

Exercise 3

1. The Sunday Times said the production was brilliant.
2. Edward Devine said he couldn't remember a funnier show.
3. Robert Walsh said it (had) made him laugh.
4. The Evening Standard said you/people had to see it. (Also possible: The Evening Standard said you/people must see it.)
5. The Telegraph said it would be a great success.
6. The Express said you/people might die laughing.

7. Susan Proctor said it was the funniest show she'd/she had ever seen.
8. Time out said you/people shouldn't miss it.

Bài 117**Exercise 1**

1. She wants to know how she can find out about the area.
2. He wants to know if/whether there are any guided tours.
3. They want to know where they can stay.
4. They want to know what shows there are.

Exercise 2

1. Do you know if I can park here?
2. Could you tell me how long the film lasts?
3. Do you know how often the buses run?
4. Do you know if we are/we're allowed to smoke?
5. Could you tell me what time the flight is?
6. Could you tell me how much a ticket costs?

Exercise 3

1. why I wanted the job.
2. how I (had) heard about it.
3. if/whether I was fit.
4. if/whether I could work on Saturdays.
5. how I would/I'd travel to work.
6. if/whether I had (got) a bicycle.
7. how much I hoped to earn.
8. when I could start.

Bài 118**Exercise 1**

1. The doctor told him to take more exercise.
2. His boss asked/told him not to play computer games in the office.
3. A traffic warden told him not to park his car in the High Street.
4. Laura asked him to put some shelves up.

Exercise 2

1. Andrew to take a break.
2. for forgetting the shopping.
3. singing a few songs.
4. Vicky to post a/the letter.
5. making a mistake.
6. Laura not to touch the electric wires.

Exercise 3

1. The builders have promised that everything will be ready on time.
2. The boss insists that we (have to) check the figures carefully.
3. Tom has admitted that his story wasn't completely true.
4. Matthew reminded Emma that her train was about to leave.

Bài 119**Exercise 1**

1. the young man at the door
2. the man who plays his stereo at night

3. the very thin woman
4. the girl with green eyes (Also possible: the green-eyed girl)
5. the young woman in the office
6. the man who drives a taxi
7. the smart young man
8. the student who failed all her exams

Exercise 2

1. that/which
2. who/that
3. who/that
4. that/which
5. that/which
6. who/that

Exercise 3

1. The bomb which went off this morning caused a lot of damage.
2. The scientist who discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
3. The footballer who took drugs has been banned from playing again.
4. The little girl who had been missing since Thursday has been found safe and well.
5. The company which owns Greenway Supermarkets has laid off thousands of workers.
6. The old lady who did a parachute jump now wants to swim the English Channel.

Bài 120**Exercise 1**

1. dog that fell down a hole has been rescued.
2. story that upset everyone was untrue.

3. man who interviewed Natasha is a film producer.
4. accident that Daniel saw wasn't very serious.
5. man who/that Claire knows is a millionaire.
6. vase that David broke was extremely valuable.
7. jacket Melanie wore at the party is really nice.

Exercise 2

1. It's/It is the car you can afford.
2. It's/It is the film people want to see.
3. It's/It is the supermarket you can trust.
4. It's/It is the magazine young people read.
5. They've/They are the chocolate you'll love.

Exercise 3

1. Somewhere I've got a photo of the mountain we climbed.
2. The man who/that repaired my car is a real expert.
3. The detective lost sight of the man he was following.
4. I thought I recognized the assistant who/that served us.
5. I'm afraid the numbers I chose didn't win a prize.

Bài 121**Exercise 1**

1. Nelson Mandela, who was in prison for 27 years, because President of South Africa.
2. John Lennon, who was killed in 1980, was one of the Beatles.

3. The Titanic, which sank in 1912, was supposed to be unsinkable.
4. Queen Victoria, who came to throne in 1837, ruled over the British Empire.
5. Mars, which is 140 million miles away, is known as the red planet.
6. The Berlin Wall, which was built in 1961, stood for 28 years.

Exercise 2

1. It adds information about the college theatre.
2. It tells us which people.
3. It adds information about Lucy Kellett.
4. It tells us which young man.
5. It adds information about the evening.

Exercise 3

1. who took Rita to the party
2. , who has a bad temper,
3. which Tom supports
4. , who is afraid of heights.
5. , which is on the tenth floor,
6. she bought the sofa from

Bài 122

Exercise 1

1. That's/That is the film (that/which) I was talking about.
2. This is the wallpaper (that/which) I've/I have decided on.
3. That's/That is the man (who/that) I played tennis with.
4. Those are the steps (that/which) I fell down.

Exercise 2

1. A hammer is a tool (that/which) you hit nails with.

2. Your destination is the place (that/which) you're/you are going to.
3. A safe is a cupboard (that/which) you keep valuable things in.
4. Your opponent is the person (who/that) you're/you are playing against.
5. A sofa bed is a piece of furniture you can either sit or sleep on.

Exercise 3

1. That is an idea in which our party believes,
2. That is a policy to which I am strongly opposed.
3. These are people about whom no one cares.
4. Those are mistakes of which your party should be ashamed.
5. That is a problem with which the government is now dealing.

Bài 123

Exercise 1

1. I ask
2. there are
3. it's
4. won't cost
5. share
6. I see
7. I'll ask

Exercise 2

1. If Rachel fails her driving test, she can take it again.

2. If United lose, Tom will be upset.
3. If the office is closed, Mark won't be able to get in.
4. If Nick arrives a bit early, he can help Tom to get things ready.
5. If the party goes on all night, no one will want to do any work tomorrow.
6. If Emma misses the train, she can get the next one.
7. If Matthew enters the race, he'll probably win it.

Exercise 3

1. If I had a dictionary, I could look the word up.
2. If I wasn't so busy, I'd/I would write to my friends.
3. If my back wasn't aching, I could play tennis.
4. if Claire loved Henry, she'd/she would marry him.
5. if he had a map, he could find the way.
6. if he/David wasn't so clumsy, he wouldn't have so many accidents.

Exercise 4

1. you wouldn't play
2. we go
3. I didn't play
4. it'd be/it would be
5. you think
6. you thought
7. it'd be/it would be
8. it won't do
9. I wouldn't get

Exercise 5

1. The phone isn't working.
2. It might rain.
3. Mike isn't here.
4. The/This spoon isn't silver.
5. Sarah might call.

Exercise 6

1. would have been

2. had lost
3. would have scored
4. she'd been/she had been
5. hadn't been
6. wouldn't have given
7. hadn't been
8. it would have been
9. we'd have beaten/we would have beaten
10. he'd been/he had been

Exercise 7

1. The guest could/would have had their lunch outside if it had been warm enough/if it hadn't been so cold.
2. Sarah could/would have flown to Rome if the airport hadn't been closed/had been open.
3. Laura might have recognized Nick if he hadn't had a crash-helmet on.
4. Sarah's plants wouldn't have died/might not have died if she'd/she had watered them.
5. Nick could/would have got in (to the ice hockey game) if he'd/he had had a ticket.

Exercise 8

1. he was/were, he'd/he would have put
2. I'd/I had paid, I wouldn't be
3. you loved, you wouldn't have left

BÀI 124

Exercise 1

1. If the twins had worn the different clothes, we could have told them apart. type 3
2. If you tell what the instructions say, I'll try to follow them. type 1

3. If people used public transport, there'd be less pollution. type 2
4. If you don't wear a sweater, you might not be warm enough. type 1
5. If I hadn't seen the product advertised, I wouldn't have bought it. type 3

Exercise 2

1. you played
2. I wouldn't/couldn't hear
3. you'd/you had told
4. I wouldn't have let
5. you didn't play
6. it wouldn't be/it might not be
7. I'd/I had realized
8. I would have thrown
9. you go
10. I'll have

Exercise 3

1. If I'd/I had known how unpopular Jason was, I wouldn't have invited him (to my party).
2. If you put too many tins into the plastic bag, it'll break.
3. If I had a pen, I could write down the address.
4. If I'd/I had started my project earlier, I wouldn't be so far behind (now).
5. If you need some/any help, give me a ring.
6. If the door opens, the fan comes on.

Exercise 4

1. unless it's/it is a nice day.
2. unless you're/you are watching it.
3. unless we get help.
4. unless I liked it.

Exercise 5

1. unless
2. if
3. unless
4. unless

Exercise 6

1. We'd/We had better book a table in case the restaurant is busy.
2. You ought to insure your jewellery in case it gets stolen.
3. I'll leave you my phone number in case you want to contact me.

Exercise 7

1. unless
2. If
3. in case
4. when

Bài 125

Exercise 1

1. I wish you'd/you would hurry up.
2. I wish you'd/you would do the washing-up.
3. I wish you'd/you would tell me the whole story.
4. I wish you wouldn't blow cigarette smoke in my face.
5. I wish you'd/you would tell me what you're thinking.

Exercise 2

1. I wish/If only I wasn't so tired.
2. I wish/If only I didn't get (these) headaches.

3. I wish/If only my work was going well/better.
4. I wish/If only I could concentrate.
5. I wish/If only life wasn't so complicated.

Exercise 3

1. I'd/I had caught it.
2. she'd/she had stayed (there).
3. she'd/she had accepted it.
4. I'd/I had found it. OR I could have found it.
5. he could have played

Exercise 4

1. I hadn't asked you (to marry me)
2. you wouldn't talk nonsense
3. I was a young man
4. you would/you'd listen
5. I'd/I had met you OR I could have met you

Bài 126**Exercise 1**

1. but it's really quite modern.
2. but she turned it down.
3. but no one laughed.

Exercise 2

1. Although the house looks old, it's really quite modern.
2. Although Emma was offered a job, she turned it down.
3. Although the joke was funny, no one laughed.

Exercise 3

1. Although
2. in spite of
3. Although
4. in spite of
5. in spite of

Exercise 4

1. in spite of/despite
2. In spite of/Despite
3. but/although/though
4. Even though/Although/Though

Exercise 5

1. Trevor didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
2. Henry doesn't know any Chinese although it was one of his school subjects.
3. Despite being a millionaire, Arthur's friend hates spending money.
4. We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.

Bài 127**Exercise 1**

1. to go to sleep.
2. to hear
3. to look
4. to finance her studies

Exercise 2

1. He's/He is going to work earlier in order to/so as to impress the boss.
2. He's/He is going to work harder in order to/so as to achieve more
3. He's/He is going to take risks in order to/so as to be a winner.
4. He's/He is going to think positively in order not to/so as not to miss any opportunities.

Exercise 3

1. Nick keeps a dog to guard the house.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 2. David is going to be very carefully so that he doesn't/won't have an accident. | 11. so |
| 3. Jessica is going on a diet to lose weight. | 12. in spite of |
| 4. Trevor often switches off the heating to save money. | |
| 5. Sarah had to go Birmingham for a business meeting. | |
| 6. Emma wore boots so that her feet wouldn't get wet. | |

Bài 128**Exercise 1**

1. I'll love you until I die
2. I hear music when I see you
3. Come back before I forget you
4. I've been sad since you left me
5. I fell in love as soon as we met

Exercise 2

1. Although
2. in order to
3. because
4. if
5. but
6. so
7. unless
8. In spite of
9. in case

Exercise 3

1. as soon as
2. to
3. since
4. but
5. so that
6. because
7. in case
8. until
9. although
10. if

KEY TO THE TESTS

Test 1

Exercise 1

1. aren't
2. does
3. Do
4. don't
5. are
6. doesn't
7. isn't

Exercise 2

1. is
2. do
3. sitting
4. don't
5. doesn't
6. go
7. being
8. get
9. gets
10. means
11. always
12. costing

Exercise 3

1. Daniel catches the same train every morning.
2. At the moment my brother is staying at a hotel.
3. Her suitcase weighs eight kilos.
4. What colour do you like best?
5. Maria is wearing her new coat today.
6. Both my sisters like sport.
7. The boys are playing football at the moment.
8. The children are doing their homework now.

Exercise 4

1. I'm living, I'm looking, I promise
2. I'm/ I am always falling, do you g
it doesn't make
3. I like, Are you enjoying, I'm/ I am
loving
4. I think, is going, I agree
5. are you doing, I'm/ I am weighing
need
6. look, they don't fit, I don't know
7. I'm thinking, cost, It's/ It is getting
8. I think, She's washing

Test 2

Exercise 1

1. left
2. were
3. died
4. had
5. didn't like
6. went
7. happened
8. wasn't
9. knew

Exercise 2

1. She was wearing her old coat.
2. We were (both) on holiday.
3. He didn't make a mistake.
4. The boys were playing (a game of
cards.
5. I didn't know about the change of
plan.
6. His friend won the competition.
7. Did the Romans build this wall?

Exercise 3

1. shining
2. was
3. wasn't
4. didn't
5. hated/detestad

6. walked/went
7. were
8. sat
9. had
10. was
11. took
12. didn't
13. wanted/ hoped/ had/ intended
14. When
15. was

Exercise 4

1. It was peaceful and the birds were singing.
2. I was washing my hair when the phone rang.
3. You didn't come to the club last night.
4. It took ages to get home.
5. We tried to keep quite because the baby was sleeping.
6. As I was watching him, the man suddenly ran away.
7. We passed a petrol-station five minutes ago.
8. Everything seemed OK.
9. Where did you buy that bag?
10. When I heard the alarm, I left the room immediately.

Exercise 5

1. was lying, rang, stopped
2. was, left, was falling
3. came, seemed, enjoyed
4. saw, was standing, had
5. opened, fell
6. was walking, felt, didn't know
7. were going, heard, drove
8. happened, was driving, saw

Test 3

Exercise 1

1. washed
2. eaten
3. opened
4. written
5. made
6. had
7. scored
8. landed
9. broken
10. been
11. sold
12. finished

Exercise 2

1. 's/has opened
2. 's/has drawn
3. 's/has broken
4. have won
5. 've/have drunk/finished
6. 've/have washed/cleaned
7. 've/have learnt/learned
8. have arrived/come
9. haven't finished

Exercise 3

1. already
2. yet
3. been
4. ever
5. this
6. long
7. gone
8. since
9. time
10. never

Exercise 4

1. have
2. ✓
3. have
4. ✓
5. ✓
6. has

7. ✓
8. ✓
9. has
10. have

Exercise 5

1. went
2. 've/have never seen
3. did
4. has won
5. worked
6. did you get
7. has been
8. has come
9. did you get
10. haven't ridden
11. was
12. Have you ever baked
13. was
14. rang
15. Have you seen
16. 've/have been

Test 4**Exercise 1**

1. I'm/I am living, I've/I have found
2. I think, it belongs
3. I'm/I am using, I want, I've/I have started
4. You leave, I've had/I have had, I've/I have been rushing

Exercise 2

1. heard
2. thought
3. was
4. called/rang/phoned
5. stopped
6. was
7. had
8. knocked
9. got/came

10. been

Exercise 3

1. It's/It has been raining for ten hours.
2. I think it's the right thing to do.
3. We've moved our/the computer.
4. I was having/eating (some/my) breakfast when Rachel rang.
5. They always play badminton on Monday.

Exercise 4

1. I was looking
2. I'm going
3. I've been trying
4. I'd spent
5. They opened

Exercise 5

1. ✓
2. been
3. was
4. are
5. have
6. ✓
7. been
8. ✓

Exercise 6

1. failed
2. lives
3. left
4. had made
5. were walking
6. saw
7. has seen
8. hadn't arrived
9. had been waiting/were waiting
10. have been trying/have tried
11. have had
12. are taking
13. believe
14. want

Test 5**Exercise 1**

- going
- Will (Also possible: Won't)
- see
- not
- to
- Shall
- is
- getting
- has
- about (Also possible: going/ready)

Exercise 2

- What time does it get to London?
- I'll tell her when I see her this evening.
- He's about to fall asleep.
- We're/We are meeting in town later. OR We're/We are going to meet in town later.
- I'll send you a postcard.
- I can read a book while I'm waiting.
- I'm/I am going to lie down.
- All your friends will be there.
- No one can go into the building until the police have searched it.

Exercise 3

- will
- is
- will
- going
- to
- have
- will
- having/holding
- starts/begins
- will

Exercise 4

- leaves

- I'm going to apply
- I'll help
- it's about to open
- I go
- Are you doing

Exercise 5

- I'm/I am going to have a rest.
- (The) term starts on 9 September.
- There will be a world war in five years' time.
- Judy and I are/We're playing tennis tomorrow.
- Prices will probably fall. (Also possible: Prices are probably going to fall.)
- The car is/We're going to crash!

Test 6**Exercise 1**

- going
- be
- will
- don't
- was
- are
- to
- about

Exercise 2

- is
- ✓
- be
- for
- ✓
- ✓
- will
- to

Exercise 3

1. 'll/will be having
2. was going to drive
3. 'll/will be working
4. 'll/will have done
5. were going to buy
6. 'll/will have had

Exercise 4

1. I'm/I am going OR I'm/I am going to go
2. I'm/I am leaving OR I leave OR I'm going to leave
3. I'm/I am visiting OR I'm/I am going to visit
4. That'll/That will be
5. starts/is starting
6. you get
7. I'll/I will send

Exercise 5

1. We'll wait for you.
2. This train stops at Bath,
3. My friend was going to meet us.
4. Bob is having a job interview on 18 October.
5. We'll/We will have finished our meal by eight o'clock.
6. I might go on the trip.
7. The fire is about to go out.

Exercise 6

1. I'm going to move
2. I'll take
3. We're going
4. He's going to jump
5. I'll be using

Test 7**Exercise 1**

1. Where have you been?
2. Do you sell postcards?

3. Who does this calculator belong to?
4. How long are you staying here?
5. What is your new office like?
6. Which of the flights are full?
7. What time does the carnival start?
8. What holiday has Alice decided on?

Exercise 2

1. How old
2. What colour
3. Whose
4. How much
5. Which
6. What kind
7. Who
8. How
9. How
10. How often
11. What

Exercise 3

1. Are you a student here?
2. How many cakes have you eaten?
3. Did you enjoy your walk?
4. Where have your friends gone?
5. What kind of music do you like?
6. Does Jack play football?
7. What are you talking about?
8. What has happened?

Exercise 4

1. Where did you buy your coat?
2. Can Amy swim?
3. Which band do you like best?
4. Who am I speaking to?
5. How much do video recorders cost?
6. May/Can I come in (, please)?
7. How long does the journey take?
8. What did you lock the door for?
9. What happen next?

10. Shall we (all) go out together?

Exercise 5

- How many cars have the Smiths got/do the Smiths have?
- Where does Alice work?
- Why is Andrew learning English?
- What was the film like?
- When will the meeting take place?
- Who switched off the computer?
- Whose burglar alarm was ringing?
- Who did Susan go to the dance with?

Test 8

Exercise 1

- Who's
- don't
- not
- has
- Haven't
- so
- they
- Which
- don't
- neither
- doesn't
- Let's

Exercise 2

- Where do you live?
- What are you thinking about?
- Would you like to come to my room?
- Didn't you watch the football match on television?
- May I take a photo (, pleased)?
- Have you seen Polly?
- How many letters have you written?
- Who is/Who's coming to your party?

9. How often does John cook?

10. What will the weather be (like) tomorrow?

Exercise 3

- No, it **hasn't**.
- No, I **hate it**/Yes, I **love it**.
- Yes, I **expect so**.
- It **isn't** very nice, is it?
- Yes, **please**.
- So **am I**/I **am too**.
- I **hope not**.
- Neither **did the second**.

Exercise 4

- How old are you?
- Did you go to college?
- What are your interest?
- Which company do you work for?
- What don't you like about your job?

Exercise 5

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. doesn't | 9. will |
| 2. course | 10. far |
| 3. neither/nor | 11. so |
| 4. No | 12. don't |
| 5. for | 13. Which |
| 6. did | 14. so |
| 7. won't | 15. hasn't |
| 8. not | 16. Which |

Test 9

Exercise 1

- mustn't**
- Would**
- might**
- would**
- needn't**

6. Shall
7. had
8. wouldn't

Exercise 2

- 1 ✓
- 2 ✓
- 3 to
- 4 for
- 5 be
- 6 ✓
- 7 been
- 8 ✓
- 9 ✓
- 10 be

Exercise 3

1. We ought to be careful.
2. I was able to finish all my work.
3. It must have been a terrible experience for you.
4. Players aren't allowed/are not allowed to have a drink.
5. You'd/You had better sit down.
6. The report has to be on my desk tomorrow morning.
7. Jane mightn't have/might not have received my message.
8. Mark can't be jogging in this weather.
9. Cindy would like a cup of coffee.
10. Karen didn't need to clean the flat.

Exercise 4

1. asking permission
2. giving an order
3. asking for advice

4. inviting
5. offering to help
6. making a suggestion
7. refusing permission
8. making a request
9. expressing a wish

Exercise 5

1. have/need
2. may/might (Also possible: mustn't)
3. has
4. can
5. allowed
6. supposed
7. shouldn't (Also possible: mustn't)
8. able

Test 10

Exercise 1

1. The film may be banned.
2. Alice was offered a pay increase.
3. The mistakes need correcting/need to be corrected.
4. The situation was reported to be under control.
5. The new drug is being tested.
6. The machine hasn't been used for ages.

Exercise 2

1. is
2. by
3. be/get
4. were
5. it
6. been

7. have
8. to
9. being

Exercise 3

1. The song was sung by Fiona.
2. Nancy had his passport stolen.
3. Doctors are paid a lot of money.
4. I hope to be interviewed for the job.
5. The floor was being cleaned.
6. Bob is having his car repaired.
7. Sarah got lost.
8. It was agreed that the plan should go ahead.
9. When did you get your kitchen decorated?
10. Exercise is said to be good for you.

Exercise 4

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. a
5. b

Exercise 5

1. The story was written by Agatha Christie.
2. Baseball is played at this stadium.
3. This shirt needs ironing/needs to be ironed.
4. I got my hair cut yesterday.
5. It is believed that there is going to be a war.
6. My parents got divorced last year.

7. I've got a report to write.
8. The winner was given a prize.
9. This man on TV is supposed to be the tallest person in the world.

Test 11

Exercise 1

1. to organize
2. wearing
3. to approve
4. to be
5. reminding
6. to be
7. working
8. to buy
9. waiting

Exercise 2

1. We must avoid wasting so much time.
2. Sometimes a country refuses to take part in the Olympics.
3. I'd/I would like to see the Rocky Mountains some day.
4. I meant to give Judy a nice welcome yesterday.
5. I always like to see my doctor once a year.
6. The buses usually stop running before midnight.
7. I can't face getting up a five tomorrow.

8. Last year we made an agreement to work together.
9. Yesterday you promised to carry on shooting the film.
10. My father seems to be getting better now.

Exercise 3

1. wait
2. to
3. seeing/meeting
4. would
5. need
6. not
7. help (Also possible: stop)
8. to
9. on

Exercise 4

1. We've finished decorating the flat.
2. I regret saying what I did.
3. Tessa decided not to go to work.
4. Do you mind helping me?
5. I'm beginning to get worried.
6. I can't afford to buy a new car.
7. I hope to avoid making things worse.
8. Peter seems to have gone away already.

Exercise 5

1. The children couldn't wait to see their presents.
2. I can't stand getting up in the dark.
3. I happened to see your brother yesterday.

4. The shop tends to open ten minutes late.
5. Do you fancy going for a walk?
6. The police carried on watching the house.
7. I'll/I will never forget seeing Nelson Mandela.

Test 12

Exercise 1

1. for
2. in
3. ✓
4. ✓
5. ✓
6. to
7. enough
8. for
9. them
10. ✓

Exercise 2

1. to get
2. making
3. reaching
4. running
5. dreaming
6. to happen
7. ordering
8. to follow
9. to be
10. to do
11. respect
12. to do
13. buying
14. order

Exercise 3

1. We saw Rupert looking in a shop window.
2. I remember the clown falling over.
3. Tesssa wasn't sure which way to go.
4. The porter just stood there expecting a tip.
5. How about going to the barbecue?
6. Susan is used to (always) living in the country.
7. I'm afraid of hurting myself.
8. Christopher apologized for forgetting to pay.
9. The food was too cold for Michelle to eat.
10. It was silly of Polly to give away the secret. (Also possible: Polly was silly to give away the secret.)

Exercise 4

1. after
2. to
3. used
4. to
5. having/eating
6. of
7. to
8. to
9. how
10. of
11. for
12. by
13. Having
14. put

Exercise 5

1. breaking, knock
2. to see, to forget
3. doing, to write
4. to bother, to ask
5. to play, watch

Test 13

Exercise 1

1. a
2. ✓
3. ✓
4. a
5. ✓
6. some
7. an
8. an

Exercise 2

1. much
2. clothes
3. pairs
4. fun
5. is/was
6. saving
7. doesn't
8. was
9. was
10. piece/slice

Exercise 3

1. Every window was broken.
2. My earnings aren't enough to live on.
3. There was litter everywhere.

4. We went to the hotel to get some food.
5. Judy bought a pair of binoculars.
6. I need a new cheque book.
7. I'll have a glass of orange juice, please.
8. The reporter needed two pieces/bits/items of information.
11. meat
12. were
13. A noise
14. were
15. is
16. light
17. sports club
18. means
19. woods
20. has

Exercise 4

1. We can't sit here because the grass is wet.
2. Do you want (some) butter on your bread?
3. All my belongings were stolen.
4. Do you have any information about hotels?
5. The police are questioning two men.
6. Can we have two coffee/two cups of coffee, please?
7. The news isn't very good, I'm afraid.
8. I just want to go into this shoe shop.
9. It's only a short journey by train.

Exercise 5

1. wears
2. a piece of advice
3. the football match
4. customs
5. are
6. many
7. is
8. these glasses
9. steelworks
10. any

Test 14**Exercise 1**

1. a
2. the
3. the
4. The
5. the
6. a
7. The
8. the
9. the
10. the
11. a
12. a
13. one
14. the
15. The

Exercise 2

1. work
2. quite a difficult
3. Golf
4. School
5. a really nice
6. some photos

7. the violin
8. breakfast
9. an X-ray
10. the radio
11. the environment
12. such terrible

Exercise 3

1. ✕
2. a
3. ✕
4. an
5. a
6. the
7. ✕
8. a
9. ✕
10. some/the (Also possible: ✕)
11. a
12. a
13. one
14. a (Also possible: one)
15. the
16. What (Also possible: Such)
17. so
18. the

Exercise 4

1. ✓
2. ✓
3. The
4. the
5. ✓
6. the
7. ✓
8. A
9. ✓
10. ✓
11. ✓

Exercise 5

1. a beautiful city
2. The weather
3. Easter
4. Princess Street
5. the Royal Scottish Museum
6. the Highlands
7. mountains
8. a thing
9. the sea
10. Corfu
11. some sunshine (Also possible: sunshine)
12. beach holidays

Test 15**Exercise 1**

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. a
5. b
6. c

Exercise 2

1. either
2. Someone
3. these
4. a few
5. Some
6. People's
7. that
8. Polly's

Exercise 3

1. a
2. mine

3. of
4. many
5. anyone
6. None
7. all
8. lot
9. whole

Exercise 4

1. That was a very good idea of yours.
 2. You've got a lot of books, haven't you?
 3. I don't know the time of the meeting.
 4. Nigel has hurt his leg.
 5. All (of) the rooms in the house were cold.
 6. Wear anything- it doesn't matter what.
 7. Each of the four doors was locked.
 8. I live my life, and my sister lives hers.
 9. Both socks/Both the socks/Both of the socks have got holes in them.
 10. Here's a copy of this week's magazine.
 11. This sweater is losing its colour.
 12. I want some paper, but there's none in here.
3. The house on the corner is bigger than ours.
 4. I've forgotten the name of my doctor.
 5. We have had/We've had little warning of the changes.
 6. So many people have applied for the job.
 7. I met an old boyfriend of yours at a party.
 8. Neither of the chairs is/are comfortable.
 9. My holiday starts in ten days' time.

Test 16

Exercise 1

1. himself
2. They
3. We
4. them
5. us
6. themselves
7. It
8. They
9. ourselves
10. her
11. me

Exercise 2

1. yourself
2. it
3. some
4. us
5. Me
6. ones
7. there

Exercise 5

1. I've lived here most of my life.
2. Every hotel was full.

8. each other's
9. else

Exercise 3

1. one
2. everyone/everybody
3. herself
4. one
5. It
6. something
7. one
8. You
9. ourselves

Exercise 4

1. one
2. himself
3. something
4. it
5. her
6. There
7. everyone/everybody
8. it
9. there
10. each
11. them
12. him

Exercise 5

1. There's/There is a train leaving in ten minutes.
2. I think someone is/someone's coming up the stairs.
3. Let's meet at eight o'clock, shall we?
4. We haven't got a camcorder, but we'd like one.
5. Let's do something different/something else today.

6. They are/They're going to build a new motorway through here.
7. I'm afraid I haven't done anything all day.
8. Everyone enjoyed themselves at the barbecue.
9. If you're buying a loaf, get a nice fresh one.
10. I've looked everywhere for my credit card.
11. The two friends still see each other/see one another occasionally.

Test 17**Exercise 1**

1. freely
2. The young man
3. hungry
4. thoughtfully
5. right
6. fascinating
7. similar
8. well
9. the disabled
10. confused
11. scientifically
12. frightened

Exercise 2

1. This is a nice place.
2. I can't find the large biscuit tin.
3. Tessa behaved in a silly way.

4. Your coffee is getting cold.
5. They live in a lovely old stone house.
6. This hospital is for the mentally ill.

Exercise 3

1. expensive
2. nice
3. surprised
4. carefully
5. amusing
6. elderly
7. friendly
8. free

Exercise 4

1. The drink tasted strange.
2. Obviously, the sick need to be looked after.
3. The dog was asleep.
4. The young woman spoke politely.
5. The train arrived late.
6. The film ends dramatically.
7. Polly shouted angrily.
8. Billiards is an indoor game.
9. The clown was amusing. (Also possible: People found the clown amusing.)
10. There was hardly any time left.

Exercise 5

1. I tasted the soup carefully.
2. ✓
3. Are the children asleep?
4. It's a school for the deaf/for deaf people.
5. It's a nice new leather jacket.

6. The rich are/Rich people are very lucky.
7. ✓
8. He used a thick green paper towel.
9. ✓
10. The course I started was boring./I was bored with the course I started.
11. I often talk to the two old people/men/women next door.
12. The smoke rose high into the air.
13. ✓
14. We felt disappointed when we lost.
15. Everyone seemed very nervous.
16. Tessa drives too fast.
17. ✓

Test 18

Exercise 1

1. more intelligent
2. cleaner
3. thinner
4. more carefully
5. worse
6. later
7. longer
8. more useful
9. sooner
10. busier
11. more annoyed
12. more nervous

Exercise 2

1. funniest

2. most horrible
3. most recent
4. largest
5. most boring
6. farthest/furthest
7. most helpful
8. most modern
9. earliest
10. saddest

Exercise 3

1. ✓
2. the
3. ✓
4. a
5. so
6. ✓
7. most
8. ✓
9. of
10. more

Exercise 4

1. nicer
2. as
3. least
4. than me
5. in
6. bit
7. as
8. the easier

Exercise 5

1. is bigger than the living-room
2. fitter than I am
3. is as big as
4. just get higher and higher
5. is more expensive than
6. is the least difficult
7. more and more excited

8. most romantic story I've ever

Test 19**Exercise 1**

1. I quite like old cowboy films.
2. Have you finished this magazine yet?
3. This coat is too big.
4. Have the children already had their tea?/Have the children had their tea already?
5. You certainly don't look ill.
6. We don't go out much.
7. I think everyone works fairly hard.
8. I still don't know the date of the meeting.
9. The others are just getting ready.
10. I have to go to work on Saturdays./On Saturdays I have to go to work.

Exercise 2

1. This game is rather silly.
2. I've already paid the bill./I've paid the bill already.
3. The alarm isn't loud enough.
4. Jonathan passed the test easily./Jonathan easily passed the test.

5. The children play cards a lot.
6. They didn't sell enough tickets.
7. You ask too many questions.
8. I'm not a member of the club any more.
9. It's warm enough to sit outside.

Exercise 3

1. yet
2. still
3. rather
4. enough
5. many
6. to
7. any
8. no
9. bit
10. soon

Exercise 4

1. I didn't sleep very well last night./Last night I didn't sleep very well.
2. I think I need to rest a little.
3. I don't work for the company any longer.
4. The article is fairly interesting.
5. Tessa locked the door carefully./Tessa carefully locked the door.
6. You aren't tall enough to play basketball.
7. We went to town yesterday./Yesterday we went to town.
8. I like this music very much./I very much like this music.

Exercise 5

1. We go to the cinema a lot.
2. Adrian always wears jeans.
3. These shoes aren't big enough
4. I no longer live in Birmingham
5. Polly spent too much money in the sales.

Test 20

Exercise 1

1. The doctor has been working for twelve hours.
2. We had a great time at the disco.
3. The woman was getting out of the car.
4. The players had numbers on their shirts.
5. The new manager takes over in two weeks' time.
6. Anna drove to the garage to get some petrol.
7. We were sitting at the back of the room.

Exercise 2

1. on
2. ago
3. on
4. at
5. at
6. on
7. in
8. across
9. during
10. until/till

Exercise 3

1. the

2. ✓
3. ✓
4. the
5. on
6. ✓
7. ✓

Exercise 4

1. on
2. for
3. by
4. at
5. since
6. with
7. above
8. of
9. while
10. between
11. like
12. with
13. ago
14. for
15. until
16. for
17. in
18. to

Exercise 5

1. Scott lives in Washington.
2. I'm travelling to Italy on business.
3. I'm busy on Friday morning.
4. They're/They have been playing (for) an hour.
5. Johnathan is very good at tennis.
6. I'm rather busy at the moment.

7. We went/traveled to Budapest by air.
8. Nigel goes past the newagent's every day.
9. The company is planning (to make) a reduction in the workforce.
10. We got to our guest house in time for a meal.

Test 21

Exercise 1

1. I must pay for my ticket.
2. I'm going to put on that expensive grey coat I bought.
3. She's invited us to lunch.
4. He's looking at them.
5. The police prevented me from leaving.
6. I'm going to turn it off.

Exercise 2

1. about
2. out
3. on
4. off
5. up
6. at
7. through
8. up for

Exercise 3

1. You've left one out.
2. I've never heard of it.
3. They ran away from it.
4. You must congratulate her on her success.

5. She's going to set up her own company.
6. He reminds me of an old school friend of mine.
7. He wants to put it forward at the meeting.

Exercise 4

1. as
2. about/of
3. look/watch
4. in
5. from
6. on
7. at
8. out (Also possible: over)
9. out
10. forward
11. woke
12. up

Exercise 5

1. You're too young to give up working.
2. This bag belongs to Janet.
3. Everyone carried on working as usual.
4. They discussed the plan.
5. I've/I have run out of money.
6. I explained the problem to the police./I explained to the police what the problem was.
7. I wouldn't put up with such terrible conditions.
8. They'll have to put off the game/put the game off.

Test 22

Exercise 1

1. me
2. did
3. ✓
4. that
5. ✓
6. me
7. did
8. for

Exercise 2

1. was
2. previous
3. whether
4. not to
5. told
6. that
7. could
8. suggested

Exercise 3

1. they
2. that/if/whether
3. she
4. to
5. didn't
6. had
7. wouldn't/didn't
8. if/whether
9. wanted/needed/had
10. next/follow/same

Exercise 4

1. she said she felt quite excited.
2. he said he couldn't remember the code word.
3. he said he wouldn't be at the next meeting.

4. they said they had/they'd got a problem.
5. she said she'd been swimming/she had been swimming.
6. they said they would like to be in the show.
7. he said he didn't need any help.
8. she said her sister was coming to see her.

Exercise 5

1. A policeman told Christopher to stop shouting.
2. Tessa admitted eating all the cake/having eaten all the cake the day before/the previous day.
3. Adrian apologized for being rude/for having been rude.
4. Simon invited Susan to join him for lunch.
5. Martin asked Nancy if/whether someone rang her/someone had rung her an hour before.
6. Peter insisted on leaving.

Test 23

Exercise 1

1. for
2. entering
3. which
4. only
5. who
6. whom
7. that you look
8. where
9. which
10. whose

Exercise 2

1. This isn't the train on which I normally travel./ This isn't the train (that/which) I normally travel on.
2. The letter that I opened wasn't for me.
3. The reason (why/that) I didn't know was that no one had told me.
4. What we should do is ring the police.
5. I didn't know the name of the man who/that helped me.
6. Rupert knows the family whose house is for sale.
7. Einstein, who failed his university entrance exam, discovered relativity.
8. The person we talked to was very friendly./The people we talked to were very friendly.
9. It's the President who makes the important decisions.
10. I can't find my diary, which is a real nuisance.
11. Outside the door was a pair of boots covered in mud.
12. Lake Superior, which lies on the US-Canadian

border, is the largest lake in North America.

Exercise 3

1. who (Also possible: that)
2. that/which
3. that/which
4. it
5. that/which
6. what
7. whose
8. which
9. what
10. who

Exercise 4

1. that/which crashed was, which crashed, was
2. (when/that) Martin rang (,) Tessa was
3. new offices are/offices, which are new, are
4. stolen from a car have been OR that/which were stolen from a car have been
5. (that/which) you were looking at is
6. Theatre, which dates from 1896, is
7. whose dog was run over was
8. the first (person) to solve/the first (person) who solved
9. selling newspapers was standing/who was selling newspapers was standing
10. (that/which) Judy gave was, which Judy gave, was

11. where I used to live is/ (that/which) I used to live in/ i which I used to live

Test 24

Exercise 1

1. it would have opened
2. disappear
3. travelled
4. would be
5. they don't build
6. would suffer
7. I'll go/I'm going to
8. I'd/I had known
9. I'd/I would have moved
10. they'd/they had done
11. there won't be/there might not be

Exercise 2

1. had been
2. in case
3. knew
4. only
5. when
6. unless

Exercise 3

1. If you talk about football, I'm going to be very bored.
2. If the baby had cried, we wouldn't have had a good sleep.
3. If you want a chat, just give me a ring.
4. If Nigel had satellite TV, he could watch/would be able to watch the game.
5. If you go away, I'll miss you.

6. If I was/were rich, I'd/I would have given up working long ago.
 7. If we'd/we had bought that picture five years ago, it would be quite valuable now.
 8. If you throw a stone into water, it sinks. OR If you throw a stone into water, it'll/it will sink.

Exercise 4

1. If it rains, I'll stay here.
 2. Can you tell me when it starts?
 3. I wouldn't need to repeat things all the time if you listened.
 4. If air gets warmer, it rises.
 5. I'd better get another one made in case I lose it.
 6. I wish we'd/we had left home earlier.
 7. If it doesn't arrive today, we'll have to complain.
 8. I wish someone would turn it down.
 9. Unless we act quickly, it'll be too late.
 10. But he wouldn't have been angry if you hadn't damaged his stereo.

Test 25

- | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. c | 3. d |
| 4. a | 5. a | 6. d |
| 7. c | 8. d | 9. b |
| 10. d | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. d | 14. a | 15. a |
| 16. b | 17. b | 18. d |
| 19. c | 20. b | 21. d |
| 22. b | 23. a | 24. c |
| 25. c | 26. b | 27. d |
| 28. d | 29. c | 30. d |
| 31. b | 32. c | 33. a |
| 34. b | 35. c | 36. b |
| 37. b | 38. b | 39. b |
| 40. d | 41. b | 42. c |
| 43. c | 44. d | 45. b |
| 46. b | 47. b | 48. b |
| 49. d | 50. c | 51. a |
| 52. c | 53. d | 54. d |
| 55. a | 56. b | 57. c |
| 58. c | 59. c | 60. d |
| 61. b | 62. d | 63. d |
| 64. d | 65. a | 66. b |
| 67. c | 68. a | 69. b |
| 70. a | 71. d | 72. b |
| 73. d | 74. b | 75. c |
| 76. d | 77. c | 78. d |
| 79. c | 80. c | 81. a |
| 82. c | 83. d | 84. d |
| 85. d | 86. c | 87. a |
| 88. c | 89. d | 90. d |
| 91. b | 92. c | 93. c |
| 94. b | 95. a | 96. b |
| 97. d | 98. d | 99. d |
| 100. d | | |

MỤC LỤC

<i>Lời nói đầu</i>	5
Bài 1: Từ loại: Danh từ, tính từ, động từ,...	6
Bài 2: Cấu trúc câu: Chủ ngữ, động từ, tân ngữ,...	8
Bài 3: Tân ngữ trực tiếp và tân ngữ gián tiếp	10
Bài 4: Hiện tại tiếp diễn	12
Bài 5: Hiện tại đơn.....	14
Bài 6: Hiện tại đơn và hiện tại tiếp diễn	16
Bài 7: Động từ chỉ hành động và động từ chỉ trạng thái.....	18
Test 1	20
Bài 8: Quá khứ đơn.....	23
Bài 9: Quá khứ tiếp diễn.....	25
Bài 10: Quá khứ tiếp diễn và quá khứ đơn	27
Test 2	29
Bài 11: Hiện tại hoàn thành	32
Bài 12: Hiện tại hoàn thành với just, already, yet, for và since,	34
Bài 13: Hiện tại hoàn thành và quá khứ đơn	36
Test 3	40
Bài 14: Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn	43
Bài 15: Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn và hiện tại hoàn thành	43
Bài 16: Quá khứ hoàn thành	45
Bài 17: Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn	49
Test 4	51
Bài 18: Will và Shall	55
Bài 19: Will và be going to.....	57
Bài 20: Các thì hiện tại mang nghĩa tương lai	59
Test 5	61
Bài 21: Tương lai tiếp diễn	64
Bài 22: Tương lai hoàn thành và quá khứ tiếp diễn	66
Test 6	68
Bài 23: Động từ Have	72

Bài 24: Dạng rút gọn: It's, don't.....	74
Bài 25: Động từ nhấn mạnh "do"	76
Bài 26: Câu hỏi.....	78
Bài 27: Câu hỏi Yes/no.....	80
Bài 28: Câu trả lời ngắn, Yes, it is.....	82
Bài 29: Câu hỏi với Wh.....	84
Bài 30: Câu hỏi chủ ngữ/ tân ngữ.....	86
Test 7	88
Bài 31: So/neither do I và I think so.....	91
Bài 32: Câu hỏi đuôi.....	93
Test 8	95
Bài 33: Can, could và be able to.....	99
Bài 34: Can, may, could và allowed to.....	101
Bài 35: May, might, could, must.....	103
Bài 36: Must và have to.....	105
Bài 37: Mustn't, needn't.....	107
Bài 38: Should, ought to, had better.....	109
Bài 39: Yêu cầu ai làm gì.....	111
Bài 40: Sự gợi ý, đề nghị, lời mời.....	113
Bài 41: Will, would, shall, và should.....	115
Test 9	117
Bài 42: Câu bị động.....	120
Bài 43: It is said that.../he is said to... và supposed to.....	125
Bài 44: Nhờ ai làm việc gì.....	127
Bài 45: To be done hoặc being done.....	129
Test 10	131
Bài 46: Động từ + to.....	134
Bài 47: Động từ - ing.....	136
Bài 48: Động từ + to hay động từ - ing.....	138
Bài 49: Verb + -ing hay verb to... (try need/help).....	140
Bài 50: Verb + -ing hay to...(3) (like would like....).....	142
Test 11	144
Bài 51: Động từ - tân ngữ - to.....	148
Bài 52: Từ để hỏi - to.....	150

Bài 51: Động từ + tân ngữ + to	148
Bài 52. Từ để hỏi + to	150
Bài 53. Tính từ + to	152
Bài 54. For với dạng nguyên thể có to	154
Bài 55. Nguyên thể có và không có to	156
Bài 56. Động từ/tính từ + giới từ + -ing	158
Bài 57. Afraid to do hay afraid of doing	160
Bài 58. Use to do và be/get used to doing	162
Bài 59. Giới từ hay từ nối + - ing	164
Bài 60. See somebody do và see somebody doing	166
Bài 61. Các thành ngữ + động từ thêm -ing	168
Test 12	170
Bài 62. Danh từ đếm được và không đếm được (1)	173
Bài 63. Danh từ đếm được và không đếm được (2)	175
Bài 64. Danh từ đếm được với a/an và some	177
Bài 65. Dạng sở hữu của danh từ	179
Bài 66. Danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều	181
Bài 67. Danh từ + danh từ	183
Test 13	185
Bài 68. A/an và the	188
Bài 69. A/an, one và some.	191
Bài 70. Mạo từ The	193
Bài 71. Địa danh đi với/không đi với mạo từ "the"	194
Bài 72. Quite a, such a, what a,	198
Test 14	200
Bài 73: This, that, these và those	204
Bài 74: My, your, ... và mine, yours,	206
Bài 75: Dạng sở hữu và "of"	208
Bài 76: Some và any	210
Bài 77: A lot of, lots of, many, much, (a) few và (a) little	212
Bài 78: All, half, most, some, no và none	214
Bài 79: Every, each, whole, both, either và neither	216
Test 15	218
Bài 80: Đại từ nhân xưng	222

Bài 81: There và it	224
Bài 82: Đại từ phản thân.....	226
Bài 83: Đại từ nhân mạnh và each other	228
Bài 84: Đại từ one/ones	230
Bài 85: Everyone, something.....	235
Test 16	234
Bài 86: Tính từ.....	237
Bài 87: Vị trí của tính từ.....	239
Bài 88: The + tính từ... ..	241
Bài 89: Interesting và interested	243
Bài 90: Tính từ hay phó từ (1).....	245
Bài 91: Tính từ hay phó từ? (2)	247
Test 17	249
Bài 92: So sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất	252
Bài 93: Mẫu so sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất (1)	255
Bài 94: Mẫu so sánh hơn và so sánh hơn nhất (2)	257
Test 18	259
Bài 95: Trạng từ và vị trí của trạng từ.....	262
Bài 96: Yet, still và already	266
Bài 97: Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (ví dụ: very, quite,...)	268
Bài 98: Quite và rather	270
Bài 99: Too và enough	272
Test 19	274
Bài 100: Giới từ chỉ địa điểm	278
Bài 101: In, on và at - chỉ địa điểm	282
Bài 102: In, on và at - chỉ thời gian.....	284
Bài 103: For, since, ago và before	286
Bài 104: During hay While? By hay Until? As hay Like?	288
Bài 105: Giới từ + danh từ (on holiday,...)	290
Bài 106: Danh từ + giới từ	292
Bài 107: Tính từ + giới từ (proud of, ...)	294
Test 20	296
Bài 108: Động từ + giới từ, ví dụ: wait for.....	300
Bài 109: Động từ + tân ngữ + giới từ	302

Bài 110: Cụm động từ (1).....	304
Bài 111: Cụm động từ (2).....	306
Bài 112: Cụm động từ (3).....	308
Bài 113: Động từ + trạng từ + giới từ.....	310
Test 21	312
Bài 114: Câu trực tiếp và câu gián tiếp.....	315
Bài 115: Sự thay đổi của đại từ chỉ người, trạng từ chỉ địa điểm và chỉ thời gian trong câu gián tiếp.....	317
Bài 116: Sự thay đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp.....	319
Bài 117: Câu hỏi gián tiếp.....	321
Bài 118: Yêu cầu gián tiếp, đề nghị gián tiếp.....	323
Test 22	325
Bài 119: Mệnh đề quan hệ (1)- mệnh đề quan hệ với who/that/which..	328
Bài 120: Mệnh đề quan hệ (2) - Mệnh đề quan hệ có hoặc không có who/that/which.....	330
Bài 121: Mệnh đề quan hệ (3) - mệnh đề "thông tin bổ sung"	332
Bài 122: Mệnh đề quan hệ (4)- mệnh đề "thông tin bổ sung"	334
Test 23	336
Bài 123: Câu điều kiện	339
Bài 124: Sự biến đổi trong câu điều kiện.....	344
Bài 125: Câu điều kiện với wish và if only	347
Test 24	349
Bài 126: But, although và in spite of.....	353
Bài 127: To, in order to, so that và for.....	355
Bài 128: Ôn tập về liên từ.....	357
Test 25	360
KEY TO THE EXERCISES.....	369
KEY TO TESTS.....	421

BÀI TẬP NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH CĂN BẢN
(BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE)

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

16 Hàng Chuối - Hai Bà Trưng - Hà Nội

Điện thoại: Biên tập – Chế bản: (04) 9714896. Hành chính: (04) 39714899

Tổng Biên tập: (04)39714897; Fax: (04) 9714899

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản

Giám đốc: PHÙNG QUỐC BẢO

Tổng biên tập: PHẠM THỊ TRÂM

Biên tập: HOÀNG THỊ PHƯƠNG THẢO

Chế bản: MCBOOKS

Sửa bản in: MCBOOKS

Vẽ bìa: TRỌNG KIÊN

 **LIÊN KẾT XUẤT BẢN**

CÔNG TY CỔ PHẦN SÁCH MCBOOKS

Địa chỉ: Số 26B, ngõ 245 khu TT Đồng Xa
Phường Mai Dịch, Cầu Giấy, Hà Nội

Website: www.mcbooks.vn

Mã số: 2L-41ĐH2011

In 5.000 cuốn, khổ 14,5x20,5cm, tại xưởng in Công nghệ
Số KHXB: 178/2011/CXB/12-18/ĐHQGHN, ngày 23/2/2011

Quyết định xuất bản số: 49 LK-XH/QĐ-NXBĐHQGHN

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý II năm 2011

